

1 **Clinical Guideline**

2

3

4 **Prostate cancer:**
5 **diagnosis and treatment**

6

7

8 **Full Guideline**

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18 Developed for NICE by the National Collaborating Centre for Cancer

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

Draft for consultation

1 **FOREWORD**

2 To be written by Dr Fergus Macbeth for the final version.

1	CONTENTS
2	Key Priorities
3	Key Research Recommendations
4	Recommendations
5	Methodology
6	Algorithm
7	1 Epidemiology
8	1.1 Introduction
9	1.2 Incidence
10	1.3 Mortality
11	1.4 Survival
12	1.5 Diagnosis & Staging
13	1.6 Surgery
14	1.7 Hormonal Therapy
15	1.8 Radiotherapy
16	1.9 The Findings of Cancer Peer Review of Urology Cancer Teams
17	2004-2007
18	2 Communication and Patient Centred Care
19	2.1 Introduction
20	2.2 Communicating with Men with Prostate Cancer, their Partners and
21	Carers
22	2.3 Decision Support
23	2.4 Specific Problems
24	
25	3 Diagnosis and Staging of Prostate Cancer
26	3.1 When to Biopsy
27	3.2 Histological Diagnosis
28	3.3 Staging Classification for Prostate Cancer
29	3.4 Nomograms
30	
31	4 Localised Prostate Cancer
32	4.1 Introduction
33	4.2 Predictive Factors and Risk Groups
34	4.3 Treatment Decision Making
35	4.4 Initial Treatment Options
36	4.5 Adverse Effects of Treatment
37	4.6 Follow-up
38	
39	5 The Management of Relapse After Radical Treatment
40	5.1 Introduction
41	5.2 Defining Biochemical Relapse
42	5.3 Assessment of Biochemical Relapse
43	
44	
45	

1	6	Locally Advanced Prostate Cancer
2	6.1	Introduction
3	6.2	Systemic Therapy
4	6.3	Local Management of Locally Advanced Prostate Cancer
5		
6	7	Metastatic Prostate Cancer
7	7.1	Introduction
8	7.2	Hormonal Therapy
9	7.3	Androgen Withdrawal versus Combined Androgen Blockade
10	7.4	Anti-androgen Monotherapy
11	7.5	Intermittent Androgen Withdrawal
12	7.6	Interventions for Managing Complications of Hormonal Therapy
13	7.7	Hormone Refractory Prostate Cancer
14	7.8	Chemotherapy
15	7.9	Oestrogens and Steroids
16	7.10	Imaging
17	7.11	Bone Targeted Therapies
18	7.12	Pelvic Targeted Therapies
19	7.13	Palliative Care
20		
21		Appendices:
22	1	PSA
23	2	TNM Staging
24	3	An Economic Evaluation of Radical Prostatectomy versus
25		Alternative Treatment Options for Clinically Localised Prostate
26		Cancer
27	4	Abbreviations
28	5	Glossary
29	6	Scope
30	7	List of Topics Covered by Each Chapter
31	8	People and Organisations Involved in the Production of the
32		Guideline

1 Key Priorities

- 2 1. Men should be adequately informed about the effects of prostate cancer and
3 the treatment options on their sexual function, appearance, continence and
4 aspects of self-image. Healthcare professionals should support men and their
5 partners to make treatment decisions taking into account the effects on quality
6 of life as well as survival.
7
- 8 2. The man's decision whether or not to proceed to prostate biopsy should be
9 informed by the prostate specific antigen (PSA) level, estimate of prostate
10 size, digital rectal examination (DRE) findings, age, ethnicity, and
11 comorbidities, together with any history of a previous negative prostate biopsy.
12 The serum PSA level alone should not automatically lead to a prostate biopsy.
13
- 14 3. Men with localised low-risk prostate cancer should not routinely be offered
15 immediate radical therapy. They should be offered watchful waiting or active
16 surveillance, depending on their life expectancy and values.
17
- 18 4. Men undergoing radical external beam radiotherapy for prostate cancer should
19 receive a minimum dose of 74Gy to the prostate at no more than 2Gy per
20 fraction.
21
- 22 5. Men and their partners should have early and ongoing access to specialist
23 erectile dysfunction services.
24
- 25 6. Men with bothersome urinary symptoms should have access to specialist
26 continence services for assessment, diagnosis and conservative treatment.
27 This may include learning coping strategies, along with pelvic floor muscle re-
28 education, bladder retraining and pharmacotherapy. Men with intractable
29 stress incontinence should be referred to a specialist surgeon for
30 consideration of an artificial urinary sphincter.
31
- 32 7. Biochemical relapse alone should not necessarily prompt an immediate
33 change in treatment.
34
- 35 8. Hormonal therapy is not routinely recommended for men with biochemical
36 relapse unless they have:
37 a. symptomatic local disease progression; or
38 b. any proven metastases; or
39 c. a PSA doubling time <3months.
40
- 41 9. When men develop biochemical evidence of hormone refractory disease their
42 management options should be discussed by the urology multidisciplinary
43 team (MDT) with a view to seeking an oncological and/or specialist palliative
44 care opinion as appropriate.
45
- 46 10. Palliative care should be available when needed and not limited to being
47 available only at end of life. It should not be restricted to being associated with
48 hospice care.
49

Key Research Recommendations

1. Research into the causes, and clinical trials of prevention and management of radiation-induced enteropathy should be undertaken.

Radiotherapy remains the most common radical treatment for localised prostate cancer and is often associated with varying degrees of enteropathy. These effects may be early or late; short-lasting or long-lasting. The biological processes are poorly understood and the best way of preventing or managing the condition is unclear.

2. Further research should be conducted into the timing and effectiveness of treatments for erectile dysfunction after all treatments for prostate cancer.

Erectile dysfunction is especially common after radical treatment for prostate cancer and also in more advanced disease. While effective treatments are available, it is not known which are most effective in this setting or when it is best to commence treatment.

3. More research should be conducted into the prevention and management of osteoporosis in men receiving long-term androgen withdrawal therapy.

Androgen withdrawal therapy is sometimes used in men with advanced prostate cancer but it often causes loss of bone mineral and consequential bone fractures. The current evidence of commonly used interventions is insufficient to make conclusions about their clinical efficacy and cost effectiveness in this setting.

4. The role of radical surgery and extended lymphadenectomy as primary therapy for locally advanced prostate cancer should be studied in clinical trials.

Lymph node involvement is a risk factor for death from prostate cancer. Some patients undergoing radical surgical treatment have involved margins (locally advanced disease) at resection. Others have extracapsular disease diagnosed prior to treatment decisions being made. It is not known if a radical attempt at cure with surgery improves survival.

5. Further clinical trials should be conducted to determine if there is a role for bisphosphonates in men with prostate cancer.

Many men with metastatic prostate cancer develop bone metastases. These are often painful and may result in serious spinal injury. In other cancer sites, e.g. breast, there is a demonstrable benefit from the use of bisphosphonates. However, there is insufficient evidence of a beneficial effect of their use in men with prostate cancer.

Recommendations

Chapter 2: Communication and Patient Centred Care

1. Recommendations on communication and patient centred care made in the two service guidance documents: “Improving Outcomes in Urological Cancers service guidance (NICE 2002)” and “Improving Supportive and Palliative Care for Adults with Cancer (NICE 2004)” should be followed throughout the patient journey.
2. Men with prostate cancer should receive individualised information tailored to their own needs. This information should be given by a clinician (consultant or specialist nurse) and may be supported by written and visual media.
3. Men should be offered advice about how to access information and support from the internet (including “*UK Prostate Cancer Link*”) and other media, local and national cancer information services, and from cancer support groups.
4. When choosing or recommending information resources, healthcare professionals should ensure that their content is clear, reliable and up to date.
5. Healthcare professionals should seek and act on feedback from men with prostate cancer and their carers who use these resources.
6. Clinical staff caring for men with prostate cancer should ascertain the extent to which the man wishes to be involved in decision making and ensure that they have sufficient information to enable them to be so.
7. A validated, up-to-date decision aid is recommended for use in all urology cancer teams. It should be offered to men with localised prostate cancer when making treatment decisions, by healthcare professionals trained in its use.
8. All relevant management options recommended in this guideline should be discussed whether or not they are available through local services.
9. Mechanisms should be put in place to ensure that, over prolonged periods of time, men and their primary care providers can gain access to specialist services.
10. Men should be adequately informed about the effects of prostate cancer and the treatment options on their sexual function, appearance, continence and aspects of self-image. Healthcare professionals should support men and their partners to make treatment decisions taking into account the effects on quality of life as well as survival.
11. Men and their partners should have the opportunity to discuss psychosexual issues with an appropriately skilled healthcare professional at any stage of the illness and its treatment.

Chapter 3: Diagnosis and Staging of Prostate Cancer

12. The man's decision whether or not to proceed to prostate biopsy should be informed by the prostate specific antigen (PSA) level, estimate of prostate size, digital rectal examination (DRE) findings, age, ethnicity, and comorbidities, together with any history of a previous negative prostate biopsy. The serum PSA level alone should not automatically lead to a prostate biopsy.
13. Men (and their partners) should be given information, support and adequate time to decide whether or not they wish to undergo prostate biopsy. The information should include an explanation of the risks (including the significant increased chance of having to live with a prostate cancer diagnosis) and the potential benefits of prostate biopsy.
14. If the clinical suspicion of prostate cancer is high, because of a high PSA value and evidence of multiple bone metastases (positive isotope bone scan or sclerotic metastases on plain radiographs), prostate biopsy for histological confirmation should be omitted, unless this is required as part of a clinical trial.
15. Prostate biopsy should be carried out following the procedure recommended by the Prostate Cancer Risk Management Programme Document (PCRMP 2006).
16. The results of all prostate biopsies should be reviewed by a urological cancer multidisciplinary team (MDT). Men should only be re-biopsied after an MDT review of the risk characteristics including life expectancy, PSA, DRE, and prostate volume.
17. The provisional treatment intent (radical or not) should be determined before decisions on imaging are made.
18. Imaging is not routinely recommended for men in whom no radical treatment is intended.
19. Pelvic imaging is not recommended for men with low-risk disease (T1c or T2a, PSA \leq 10ng/ml, Gleason score \leq 6).
20. Computerised Tomography (CT) imaging of the pelvis is not recommended for men with intermediate-risk disease (PSA 10-20ng/ml, or Gleason score 7, or clinical stage T2b or T2c)
21. Men with high-risk disease (T3, PSA > 20ng/ml, or Gleason score 8-10) being considered for radical treatment should have pelvic imaging with either Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI), or CT if contraindicated.
22. Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy (MRS) is not recommended except in the context of a clinical trial.
23. Isotope bone scintigraphy is not routinely recommended for men with low-risk disease.

- 1 24. Bone scanning should be performed when hormonal therapy is being deferred
2 in high-risk, asymptomatic men.
- 3 25. Positron emission tomography (PET) imaging for prostate cancer is not
4 recommended in routine clinical practice.
- 5
- 6 26. Nomograms should be used by doctors and patients in partnership to:
7 a. aid decision making
8 b. predict biopsy results
9 c. predict pathological stage
10 d. predict risk of treatment failure.
- 11
- 12 27. Where nomograms are used the reliability, validity and limitations of the
13 prediction should be clearly explained, with appropriate support.
- 14

15 **Chapter 4: Localised Prostate Cancer**

- 16
- 17 28. Urological cancer MDTs should assign a risk category to all newly diagnosed
18 men with localised prostate cancer.
- 19
- 20 29. Men who have chosen a watchful waiting regimen with no curative intent
21 should normally be followed up in primary care. Investigations should not be
22 performed unless symptoms occur and treatment is appropriate.
- 23
- 24 30. Men with localised low-risk prostate cancer should not routinely be offered
25 immediate radical therapy. They should be offered watchful waiting or active
26 surveillance, depending on their life expectancy and values.
- 27
- 28 31. Active surveillance is strongly recommended for men with a clinical stage T1c,
29 a Gleason score 3+3, and with a PSA density $<0.15\text{ng/ml}^2$ and less than 50%
30 of biopsy cores involved ($<10\text{mm}$ of any 1 core involved).
- 31
- 32 32. Active surveillance can be recommended for other men with low-risk disease.
- 33
- 34 33. Active surveillance should be discussed as an option with men who have
35 intermediate-risk disease.
- 36
- 37 34. Active surveillance is not recommended for men with high-risk localised
38 disease.
- 39
- 40 35. For men on active surveillance the following regimen is recommended:
41 • To reduce the sampling error associated with prostate biopsy, men who
42 are candidates for active surveillance should have had at least 10 biopsy
43 cores.
- 44 • Repeat prostate biopsy should be performed at 1, 4 and 7 years, in
45 accordance with the ProSTART trial protocol.
- 46 • PSA should be tested every 3 months during the first 2 years and 6
47 monthly thereafter.
- 48 • PSA velocity should be estimated by linear regression of PSA against
49 time, using at least 5 PSA values over at least one year, and preferably
50 over 2 or more years. A tool such as the Prostagram
51 (<http://www.mskcc.org/mskcc/html/10088.cfm>) should be used.

- 1 • Indications for considering radical treatment include any of a PSA velocity
2 >1ng/ml/year, higher-grade or more extensive disease on repeat biopsy,
3 or evidence of locally advanced disease on DRE.
- 4 • The decision to proceed to radical treatment should be made in the light
5 of the individual man's values, comorbidities and life expectancy.

6
7 36. Radical prostatectomy or radical radiotherapy (conformal or brachytherapy)
8 should be considered for men with intermediate-risk localised prostate cancer.

9
10 37. Radical prostatectomy or radical radiotherapy (conformal) is recommended for
11 men with high-risk localised prostate cancer.

12
13 38. For men receiving radical external beam radiotherapy for localised prostate
14 cancer, 3D conformal radiotherapy should be used.

15
16 39. Men undergoing radical external beam radiotherapy for prostate cancer should
17 receive a minimum dose of 74Gy to the prostate at no more than 2Gy per
18 fraction.

19
20 40. Given the range of treatment modalities and their serious side effects, men
21 with prostate cancer who are candidates for radical therapies should have the
22 opportunity to discuss their treatment options with both a specialist surgical
23 oncologist and a specialist clinical oncologist.

24
25 41. Other radical therapies such as cryotherapy and high intensity focussed
26 ultrasound (HIFU) are not recommended for men with localised or locally
27 advanced prostate cancer other than in the context of controlled clinical trials.

28
29 42. Men presenting with symptoms consistent with radiation-induced enteropathy
30 should be fully investigated, including flexible sigmoidoscopy, in order to
31 exclude inflammatory bowel disease or malignancy of the large bowel and to
32 ascertain the nature of the radiation injury. Particular caution should be taken
33 with anterior wall rectal biopsy following brachytherapy because of the risk of
34 fistulation.

35
36 43. Men treated with radical radiotherapy for prostate cancer should be offered
37 follow-up with flexible sigmoidoscopy every 5 years.

38
39 44. Steroid enemas should not be used for treating men with radiation
40 proctopathy.

41
42 45. The nature and treatment of radiation-induced injury to the gastrointestinal
43 (GI) tract should be included in the training programmes for oncologists and
44 gastroenterologists.

45
46 46. Prior to treatment, men and their partners should be warned that treatment for
47 prostate cancer will result in an alteration of sexual experience, and may result
48 in loss of sexual function.

49
50 47. Men and their partners should be warned about the potential loss of
51 ejaculation and fertility associated with treatment for prostate cancer. Sperm
52 storage should be offered if fertility is important to the man and/or his partner.

- 1
2 48. Men and their partners should have early and ongoing access to specialist
3 erectile dysfunction services.
4
5 49. Men with prostate cancer who experience loss of erectile function should be
6 offered PDE5 (phosphodiesterase type 5) inhibitors to improve the chance of
7 spontaneous erections.
8
9 50. If PDE5 inhibitors fail to restore erectile function or are contraindicated,
10 vacuum devices, intraurethral inserts or penile injections, or penile prostheses
11 should be considered as an alternative.
12
13 51. Men experiencing bothersome urinary symptoms before treatment should
14 undergo urological assessment.
15
16 52. Men undergoing treatment for prostate cancer should be warned of the likely
17 effects of the treatment on their urinary function.
18
19 53. Men with bothersome urinary symptoms should have access to specialist
20 continence services for assessment, diagnosis and conservative treatment.
21 This may include learning coping strategies, along with pelvic floor muscle re-
22 education, bladder retraining and pharmacotherapy. Men with intractable
23 stress incontinence should be referred to a specialist surgeon for
24 consideration of an artificial urinary sphincter.
25
26 54. The injection of bulking agents into the distal urinary sphincter is not
27 recommended to treat stress incontinence.
28
29 55. The purpose, duration, frequency and location of follow-up should be
30 discussed with each man, and where he wishes, his partner.
31
32 56. Men should be clearly advised about potential longer term adverse effects and
33 when and how to report them.
34
35 57. PSA levels should be checked at the earliest 6 weeks following treatment, at
36 least 6 monthly for the first 2 years and then at least yearly thereafter.
37
38 58. Routine DRE is not recommended while the PSA remains at baseline levels.
39
40 59. After 2 years at the earliest, men with a stable PSA and no significant
41 treatment complications, should be offered follow-up outside hospital, for
42 example in primary care, by telephone or e-mail, or a combination, unless they
43 are participating in a clinical trial which requires more formal clinic-based
44 follow-up. The opportunity of direct access to the specialist team should be
45 offered and explained.
46
47 60. Men who have chosen a watchful waiting regimen with no curative intent
48 should normally be followed up in primary care.
49

50 **Chapter 5: The Management of Relapse After Radical Treatment**

- 51 61. Serial PSA levels after radical treatment should be analysed using the same
52 assay technique.

- 1
2 62. Biopsy of the prostatic bed should not be performed in men who have had a
3 radical prostatectomy.
4
5 63. Biopsy of the prostate after radiotherapy should only be done in men being
6 considered for salvage local therapy in the context of clinical research.
7
8 64. Routine MRI scanning should not be performed prior to salvage radiotherapy.
9
10 65. An isotope bone scan should be performed if symptoms or PSA trends are
11 suggestive of metastases.
12
13 66. Biochemical relapse alone should not necessarily prompt an immediate
14 change in treatment.
15
16 67. Biochemical relapse should trigger an estimate of PSA doubling time, based
17 on a minimum of 3 measurements over at least a 6 month period.
18
19 68. Men with biochemical relapse after radical prostatectomy, with no known
20 metastases, should be offered early radical radiotherapy to the prostate bed.
21
22 69. Men with biochemical relapse should be considered for entry to appropriate
23 clinical trials, for example RADICALS.
24
25 70. Hormonal therapy is not routinely recommended for men with biochemical
26 relapse unless they have:
27
 - 28 • symptomatic local disease progression; or
 - 29 • any proven metastases; or
 - 30 • a PSA doubling time <3months.

31 **Chapter 6: Locally Advanced Prostate Cancer**

- 32
33 71. Neoadjuvant and concurrent luteinising hormone-releasing hormone agonist
34 (LHRHa) therapy for 3 to 6 months is recommended for men receiving radical
35 radiotherapy for high-risk localised or locally advanced prostate cancer.
36
37 72. Adjuvant hormonal therapy in addition to radical prostatectomy is not
38 recommended, even in margin positive disease, other than in the context of a
39 clinical trial, for example RADICALS.
40
41 73. Adjuvant hormonal therapy for up to 3 years is recommended for men
42 receiving neoadjuvant hormonal therapy and radical radiotherapy for high-risk
43 localised or locally advanced prostate cancer who have a Gleason score of ≥ 8 .
44
45 74. Adjuvant hormonal therapy is not recommended for men with a Gleason score
46 of ≤ 7 .
47
48 75. Bisphosphonates should not be used for the prevention of bone metastases in
49 men with prostate cancer.
50
51 76. Pelvic radiotherapy should be considered in men with >15% risk (estimated
52 using the Roach formula (%LN risk = $2/3$ PSA + [10x (Gleason score - 6)]) of

1 pelvic lymph node involvement who are to receive neoadjuvant hormonal
2 therapy and radical radiotherapy to the prostate.
3

4 77. Immediate post-operative radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy is not
5 recommended, even in margin positive disease, other than in the context of a
6 clinical trial, for example RADICALS.
7

8 **Chapter 7: Metastatic Prostate Cancer**

9

10 78. Bilateral orchidectomy should be recommended as an alternative to
11 continuous LHRHa therapy.
12

13 79. Combined androgen blockade is not recommended as first-line treatment.
14

15 80. For men who are willing to accept the adverse impact on overall survival and
16 gynaecomastia in the hope of retaining sexual function, anti-androgen
17 monotherapy with bicalutamide* is appropriate.
18

19 81. Men taking bicalutamide who do not maintain satisfactory sexual function,
20 should stop bicalutamide and be treated with androgen withdrawal.
21

22 82. Intermittent androgen withdrawal may be offered as an alternative to
23 continuous androgen withdrawal, especially to men with severe side effects.
24

25 83. Synthetic progestogens are recommended as first-line therapy for the
26 management of troublesome hot flushes. If oral therapy is used it should be
27 given for 2 weeks, and re-started, if effective, on recurrence of symptoms.
28

29 84. Men starting long-term (>6 months) bicalutamide monotherapy daily should
30 receive prophylactic radiotherapy to both breast buds within the first month of
31 treatment. A single fraction of 8Gy using orthovoltage radiotherapy is
32 recommended.
33

34 85. If radiotherapy is unsuccessful in preventing gynacomastia, weekly tamoxifen
35 should be considered.
36

37 86. Men starting androgen withdrawal therapy should be informed that regular
38 resistance exercise reduces fatigue and improves quality of life.
39

40 87. Docetaxel is recommended, within its licensed indications, as a treatment
41 option for men with hormone refractory metastatic prostate cancer only if their
42 Karnofsky performance status score is 60% or more.
43

44 88. It is recommended that treatment with docetaxel should be stopped:

- 45 • at the completion of planned treatment of up to 10 cycles, or
- 46 • if severe adverse events occur, or
- 47 • in the presence of progression of disease as evidenced by clinical or
48 laboratory criteria, or by imaging studies.
49

* BNF states that bicalutamide monotherapy should be at a dose of 150mg daily. A lower dose (50mg) is used for combined androgen blockade.

- 1 89. Repeat cycles of treatment with docetaxel are not recommended if the disease
2 recurs after completion of the planned course of chemotherapy.
3
- 4 90. When men develop biochemical evidence of hormone refractory disease their
5 management options should be discussed by the urology MDT with a view to
6 seeking an oncological and/or specialist palliative care opinion as appropriate.
7
- 8 91. Dexamethasone at a dose of 0.5mg daily[†] is recommended as third line
9 hormonal therapy after androgen withdrawal and anti-androgen therapy.
10
- 11 92. Men with hormone refractory prostate cancer shown to have extensive
12 disease in the spine, for example on a bone scan, should have spinal MRI if
13 they develop any spinal related symptoms.
14
- 15 93. The routine use of spinal MRI for all men with hormone refractory prostate
16 cancer and known bone metastases is not recommended.
17
- 18 94. The use of bisphosphonates to prevent or reduce the complications of bone
19 metastases in men with hormone refractory prostate cancer (HRPC) is not
20 recommended.
21
- 22 95. Bisphosphonates for pain relief may be considered when other treatments,
23 including analgesics and palliative radiotherapy, have failed. The choice of
24 drug should be based on the cost and either the oral or intravenous route of
25 administration should be chosen according to convenience and tolerability.
26
- 27 96. Bisphosphonates should not be used routinely in men receiving androgen
28 withdrawal therapy for prostate cancer.
29
- 30 97. The recommendations in the NICE Clinical Guideline on Osteoporosis should
31 be followed once it is published.
32
- 33 98. Sr-89 should be considered for men with painful bone metastases from HRPC
34 especially for men who are unlikely to receive myelosuppressive
35 chemotherapy.
36
- 37 99. Upper urinary tract decompression by percutaneous nephrostomy or by
38 insertion of a double J stent should be offered to men with obstructive
39 uropathy secondary to hormone refractory prostate cancer.
40
- 41 100. The option of no intervention should also be discussed openly with men and
42 remains a choice for some.
43
- 44 101. Men with metastatic prostate cancer should receive tailored information and
45 access to specialist urology and palliative care teams to address their
46 specific needs.
47
- 48 102. The regular assessment of needs (described in the NICE Guidance on
49 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer') should be
50 applied systematically to men with prostate cancer.

[†] Often used at higher doses in other indications

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19

- 103. Men with metastatic prostate cancer should be given the opportunity to discuss their therapy and information needs with members of both urology and specialist palliative care teams when there are significant changes in their disease status or symptoms.
- 104. Palliative interventions at any stage should be integrated into co-ordinated care, and any transitions of care settings should be facilitated as smoothly as possible.
- 105. Men with prostate cancer, their partners and carers should be consulted as early as possible in respect of their values and preferences for palliative care. Treatment/care plans and preferred place of care should be tailored accordingly.
- 106. Palliative care should be available when needed and not limited to being available only at end of life. It should not be restricted to being associated with hospice care.

1 METHODOLOGY

2 1. Introduction

3 1.1 What is a Clinical Guideline?

4 Guidelines are recommendations for the care of individuals in specific clinical
5 conditions or circumstances – from prevention and self-care through to primary and
6 secondary care and onto more specialised services. NICE clinical guidelines are
7 based on the best available evidence of clinical and cost effectiveness, and are
8 produced to help healthcare professionals and patients make informed choices about
9 appropriate healthcare. While guidelines assist the practice of healthcare
10 professionals, they do not replace their knowledge and skills.

11
12 Clinical guidelines for the NHS in England and Wales are produced as a response to
13 a request from the Department of Health (DH) and the Welsh Assembly Government.
14 They select topics for guideline development and before deciding whether to refer a
15 particular topic to the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) they
16 consult with the relevant patient bodies, professional organisations and companies.
17 Once a topic is referred, NICE then commissions one of seven National Collaborating
18 Centres (NCCs) to produce a guideline. The Collaborating Centres are independent
19 of government and comprise partnerships between a variety of academic institutions,
20 health profession bodies and patient groups. The National Collaborating Centre for
21 Cancer (NCC-C) was referred the topic of prostate cancer in October 2003 as part of
22 NICE's ninth wave work programme. However the guideline development process
23 began officially on 10th November 2005 when sufficient capacity became available at
24 the NCC-C.

25

26 1.2 Who is the Guideline Intended For?

27 This guideline does not include recommendations covering every detail of the
28 diagnosis and treatment of prostate cancer. Instead we have tried to focus on those
29 areas of clinical practice that are (i) known to be controversial or uncertain; (ii) where
30 there is identifiable practice variation; (iii) where there is a lack of high quality
31 evidence; or (iv) where NICE guidelines are likely to have most impact. More detail
32 on how this was achieved is presented later in the section on 'Developing clinical
33 evidence based questions'.

34

35 The guideline is relevant to all healthcare professionals who come into contact with
36 prostate cancer patients, as well as to the patients themselves and their carers. It is
37 also expected that the guideline will be of value to those involved in clinical
38 governance in both primary and secondary care to help ensure that arrangements
39 are in place to deliver appropriate care to this group of patients.

40

41 1.3 The Remit of the Guideline

42 Guideline topics selected by the DH and the Welsh Assembly Government identify
43 the main areas to be covered by the guideline in a specific remit. The following remit
44 for this guideline was received as part of NICE's ninth wave programme of work:

45

46 ***'To prepare a guideline for the NHS in England and Wales for the clinical
47 management of prostate cancer, to supplement existing service guidance. The
48 guideline should cover:***

- 49 • ***the key diagnostic and staging procedures – excluding screening***

- 1 • *the main treatment modalities including hormonal treatments (covering*
- 2 *surgical and chemical castration)*
- 3 • *the role of tumour specific bisphosphonates.'*
- 4

5 **1.4 What the Guideline Covers - The Scope**

6 The remit was then translated into a scope document by the Guideline Development
7 Group (GDG) Chair and Clinical Lead and staff at the NCC-C. The purpose of the
8 scope was to:

- 9 • provide an overview of what the guideline would include and exclude
- 10 • identify the key aspects of care that must be included
- 11 • set the boundaries of the development work and provide a clear framework to
- 12 enable work to stay within the priorities agreed by NICE and the NCC-C and
- 13 the remit from the DH/Welsh Assembly Government
- 14 • inform the development of the clinical questions and search strategy
- 15 • inform professionals and the public about the expected content of the
- 16 guideline.
- 17

18 Prior to the commencement of the guideline development process, the scope was
19 subject to a four week stakeholder consultation in accordance with processes
20 established by NICE (NICE 2007). The full scope is shown in Appendix 6. During the
21 consultation period, the scope was posted on the NICE website (www.nice.org.uk).
22 Comments were invited from registered stakeholder organisations and the NICE
23 Guideline Review Panel (GRP). Further information about the GRP can also be
24 found on the NICE website. The NCC-C and NICE reviewed the scope in light of
25 comments received, and the revised scope was signed off by the GRP and posted on
26 the NICE website.

27 **1.5 Involvement of Stakeholders**

28 Key to the development of all NICE guidelines are the relevant professional and
29 patient/carer organisations that register as stakeholders. Details of this process can
30 be found on the NICE website or in the 'NICE guidelines manual' (NICE 2007). In
31 brief, their contribution involves commenting on the draft scope, submitting relevant
32 evidence at the start of the process and commenting on the draft version of the
33 guideline during the end consultation period. A full list of all stakeholder organisations
34 who registered to the prostate cancer guideline can be found in Appendix 8.

35 **1.6 Needs Assessment**

36 As part of the guideline development process the NCC-C invited the National South
37 West Public Health Observatory to undertake a needs assessment. The needs
38 assessment aims to describe the burden of disease and current service provision for
39 men with prostate cancer in England and Wales, to inform the development of the
40 guideline. This document forms a supplement to the full guideline and will also
41 appear on an accompanying CD-ROM when the guideline is published.

42 Assessment of the effectiveness of interventions is not included in the needs
43 assessment, and was undertaken separately by researchers in the NCC-C as part of
44 the guideline development process.

45 The information included in the needs assessment document was presented to the
46 GDG. Most of the information was presented early in the stages of guideline
47 development, and other information was included to meet the evolving information
48 needs of the GDG during the course of guideline development.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52

2. The Process of Guideline Development – Who Develops the Guideline?

2.1 Overview

The development of this guideline was based upon methods outlined by the ‘NICE guidelines manual’ (NICE 2007). A team of health professionals, lay representatives and technical experts known as the GDG (see Appendix 8), with support from the NCC-C staff, undertook the development of this clinical guideline. The basic steps in the process of developing a guideline are listed and discussed below:

- using the remit, define the scope which sets the parameters of the guideline
- forming the guideline development group
- developing clinical evidence-based questions
- systematically searching for the evidence
- critically appraising the evidence
- incorporating health economic evidence
- distilling and synthesising the evidence and writing recommendations
- agreeing the recommendations
- structuring and writing the guideline
- updating the guideline.

2.2 The Guideline Development Group (GDG)

The prostate cancer GDG was recruited in line with the existing NICE protocol as set out in the NICE guidelines manual’ (NICE 2007). The first step was to appoint a Chair and a Clinical Lead. Advertisements were placed for both posts and candidates were informally interviewed prior to being offered the role. The NCC-C Director, GDG Chair and Clinical Lead identified a list of specialties that needed to be represented on the GDG. Requests for nominations were sent to the main stakeholder organisations and patient organisations/charities (see Appendix 8). Individual GDG members were selected by the NCC-C Director, GDG Chair and Clinical Lead, based on their application forms, following nomination from their respective stakeholder organisation. The guideline development process was supported by staff from the NCC-C, who undertook the clinical and health economics literature searches, reviewed and presented the evidence to the GDG, managed the process and contributed to drafting the guideline. At the start of the guideline development process all GDG members’ interests were recorded on a standard declaration form that covered consultancies, fee-paid work, share-holdings, fellowships and support from the healthcare industry. At all subsequent GDG meetings, members declared new, arising conflicts of interest which were always recorded (see Appendix 8).

2.3 Guideline Development Group Meetings

Thirteen GDG meetings were held between 10 November 2005 and 28 June 2007. During each GDG meeting (either held over one day or two days) clinical questions and clinical and economic evidence were reviewed and assessed and recommendations formulated. At each meeting patient/carer and service-user concerns were routinely discussed as part of a standing agenda item.

NCC-C project managers divided the GDG workload by allocating specific clinical questions, relevant to their area of clinical practice, to small sub-groups of the GDG in order to simplify and speed up the guideline development process. These groups considered the evidence, as reviewed by the systematic reviewer, and synthesised it into draft recommendations prior to presenting it to the GDG as a whole. Each clinical question was led by a GDG member with expert knowledge of the clinical area (usually one of the healthcare professionals). The GDG sub-groups often helped

1 refine the clinical questions and the clinical definitions of treatments. They also
2 assisted the NCC-C team in drafting the section of the guideline relevant to their
3 specific topic.

4 **2.4 Patient/Carer Representatives**

5 Individuals with direct experience of prostate cancer services gave an integral user
6 focus to the GDG and the guideline development process. The GDG included three
7 patient/carer representatives. They contributed as full GDG members to writing the
8 clinical questions, helping to ensure that the evidence addressed their views and
9 preferences, highlighting sensitive issues and terminology relevant to the guideline
10 and bringing service-user research to the attention of the GDG.

11 **2.5 Expert Advisers**

12 During the development phase of the guideline the GDG identified areas where there
13 was a requirement for expert input on particular specialist clinical questions. The
14 clinical questions were addressed by either the production of a position paper or a
15 formal presentation by a recognised expert (Appendix 8) who had been identified via
16 the relevant registered stakeholder organisation. A full list of recognised experts who
17 contributed to the guideline can be found Appendix 8. All relevant position papers are
18 presented as part of the evidence review.

19 **3. Developing Clinical Evidence-Based Questions**

20 **3.1 Background**

21 The scope, as described in Appendix 6, needs to be very clear about which patient
22 groups are included and which areas of clinical care should be considered. But within
23 these boundaries it does not usually specify which topics that are considered a
24 priority.

25 It was recognised by the NCC-C at an early stage that in order to complete the
26 guideline development work to an appropriate standard the GDG needed to restrict
27 its work to approximately 30 clinical questions. Previously this prioritisation would
28 have been carried out by the GDG at its first two meetings but it was clear from some
29 guidelines already published that this approach had resulted in a much larger number
30 of questions than 30 being addressed.

31 Clinical guidelines should be aimed at changing clinical practice and should avoid
32 ending up as 'evidence-based textbooks' or making recommendations on topics
33 where there is already good clinical practice. It was therefore felt important that the
34 30 clinical questions should be prioritised into areas that were known to be
35 controversial or uncertain, where there was identifiable practice variation, or where
36 NICE guidelines were likely to have most impact

37 **3.2 Method**

38 An extensive list of potential topics for the guideline to investigate was compiled by
39 the NCC-C Director and GDG Chair and Clinical Lead in consultation with a small
40 number of prostate cancer multidisciplinary teams across England and Wales.

41 This list was incorporated into a questionnaire which asked respondents to rate each
42 topic on a five point Likert scale ranging from 0 (not a priority) to 5 (very high priority).
43 It was made clear that respondents would be rating the priority for each topic to be
44 included in a clinical guideline to be published in two years' time. The questionnaire

1 also asked respondents to suggest any additional topics they would like to see
2 included with an equivalent assessment of their priority.
3

4 Questionnaires were subsequently sent to the Prostate Cancer Advisory Groups of
5 all 37 cancer networks in England and Wales with a request for a 4-week turnaround.
6 (A list of all cancer networks can be found on the Cancer Action Team website at the
7 DH). Questionnaires were also sent via the Patient and Public Involvement
8 Programme (PPIP) at NICE to all relevant patient/carer stakeholder organisations.
9

10 The scores from each completed questionnaire was aggregated by NCC-C staff and
11 ranked. These results together with information on identifiable practice variation (see
12 needs assessment) were presented to the GDG at its first meeting. The list of
13 prioritised topics produced via the questionnaire survey was in no way definitive and
14 the GDG used these results to agree their final priorities for the clinical questions.
15

16 For clinical questions about interventions, the PICO framework was used. This
17 structured approach divides each question into four components: the patients (the
18 population under study - P), the interventions (what is being done - I), the
19 comparisons (other main treatment options - C) and the outcomes (the measures of
20 how effective the interventions have been - O). Where appropriate, the clinical
21 questions were refined once the evidence had been searched and, where necessary,
22 sub-questions were generated.
23

24 The final list of clinical questions can be found in Appendix 7.
25

26 **3.3 Care Pathway**

27 Early in the development process the GDG drafted an outline care pathway (or
28 algorithm) in order to explore how patients with prostate cancer might access and be
29 dealt with by the NHS.
30

31 **3.4 Review of Clinical Literature**

32 At the beginning of the development phase, initial scoping searches were carried out
33 to identify any relevant guidelines (local, national or international) produced by other
34 groups or institutions. Additionally, stakeholder organisations were invited to submit
35 evidence for consideration by the GDG, provided it was relevant to the agreed list of
36 clinical questions.
37

38 In order to answer each question the NCC-C information specialist developed a
39 search strategy to identify relevant published evidence for both clinical and cost
40 effectiveness. Key words and terms for the search were agreed in collaboration with
41 the GDG. When required, the health economist searched for supplemental papers to
42 inform detailed health economic work, for example modeling (see section on
43 'Incorporating Health Economic Evidence').
44

45 Papers that were published or accepted for publication in peer-reviewed journals
46 were considered as evidence. Search filters, such as those to identify systematic
47 reviews (SRs) and randomised controlled trials (RCTs) were applied to the search
48 strategies when necessary. No language restrictions were applied to the search;
49 however, foreign language papers were not requested or reviewed (unless of
50 particular importance to that question).
51
52

1 The following databases were included in the literature search:

- 2 • The Cochrane Library
- 3 • Medline and Premedline 1950 onwards
- 4 • Excerpta Medica (Embase) 1980 onwards
- 5 • Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature (Cinahl) 1982
- 6 onwards
- 7 • Allied & Complementary Medicine (AMED) 1985 onwards
- 8 • British Nursing Index (BNI) 1994 onwards
- 9 • Psycinfo 1806 onwards
- 10 • Web of Science 1970 onwards. [specifically Science Citation Index Expanded
- 11 (SCI-EXPANDED) and Social Sciences Citation Index (SSCI)]
- 12 • System for Information on Grey Literature In Europe (SIGLE) 1980 – 2005
- 13 • Biomed Central 1997 onwards
- 14 • National Research Register (NRR)
- 15 • Current Controlled Trials

16
17 From this list the information specialist sifted and removed any irrelevant material
18 based on the title or abstract before passing to the researcher. All the remaining
19 articles were then stored in a Reference Manager electronic library.

20
21 Searches were updated and re-run 6–8 weeks before the stakeholder consultation,
22 thereby ensuring that the latest relevant published evidence was included in the
23 database. Any evidence published after this date was not included. For the purposes
24 of updating this guideline, 1 June 2007 should be considered the starting point for
25 searching for new evidence.

26
27 Further details of the search strategies, including the methodological filters used, are
28 provided in the evidence review (and will also appear on the accompanying CD-ROM
29 when the guideline is published).

30 31 **3.5 Critical Appraisal and Evidence Grading**

32 Following the literature search one researcher independently scanned the titles and
33 abstracts of every article for each question, and full publications were obtained for
34 any studies considered relevant or where there was insufficient information from the
35 title and abstract to make a decision. The researcher then individually applied the
36 inclusion/exclusion criteria to determine which studies would be relevant for inclusion
37 and subsequent appraisal. Lists of excluded papers were generated for each
38 question and the rationale for the exclusion was presented to the GDG when
39 required.

40
41 The researcher then critically appraised the full papers. Critical appraisal checklists
42 were compiled for each paper and one researcher undertook the critical appraisal
43 and data extraction.

44
45 The reviewers assessed the quality of eligible studies by referring to the SIGN quality
46 checklist for systematic reviews/meta-analyses and randomised control trials (Table
47 1). Evidence relating to clinical effectiveness was classified using this established
48 hierarchical system. However this checklist is less appropriate for studies reporting
49 diagnostic tests of accuracy. In the absence of a validated hierarchy for this type of
50 test, NICE suggests levels of evidence that take into account the factors likely to
51 affect the validity of these studies (NICE 2007).

1

Level	Source of evidence
1++	High-quality meta-analyses, systematic reviews of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) or RCTs with a very low risk of bias
1+	Well-conducted meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs or RCTs with a low risk of bias
1-	Meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs or RCTs with a high risk of bias
2++	High-quality systematic reviews of case-control or cohort studies; high-quality case-control or cohort studies with a very low risk of confounding, bias or chance and a high probability that the relationship is causal
2+	Well-conducted case-control or cohort studies with a low risk of confounding, bias or chance and a moderate probability that the relationship is causal
2-	Case-control or cohort studies with a high risk of confounding, bias or chance and a significant risk that the relationship is not causal
3	Non-analytical studies (for example case reports, case series)
4	Expert opinion, formal consensus

2 **Table 1** Levels of evidence for intervention studies

3

4 For all the relevant appraised studies for a particular question, data on the type of
5 population, intervention, comparator and outcomes (PICO) was recorded in evidence
6 tables and an accompanying evidence summary prepared for the GDG (see
7 evidence review). All the evidence was considered carefully by the GDG for accuracy
8 and completeness.

9

10 All procedures were fully compliant with NICE methodology as detailed in the 'NICE
11 guidelines manual' (NICE 2007).

12

13 In general, no formal contact was made with authors; however, there were ad hoc
14 occasions when this was required in order to clarify specific details.

15

16 **3.6 Incorporating Health Economics Evidence**

17 The aim of the economic input into the guideline was to inform the GDG of potential
18 economic issues relating to prostate cancer. It is important to investigate whether
19 health services are both clinically effective and cost effective, i.e. are they 'value for
20 money'.

21

22 The health economist helped the GDG by identifying priority topics within the
23 guideline that might benefit from economic analysis, reviewing the available
24 economic evidence and, where necessary, conducting economic analysis. Where
25 published economic evaluation studies were identified that addressed the economic
26 issues for a clinical question, these are presented alongside the clinical evidence
27 wherever possible.

28

29 In order to assess the cost-effectiveness of each priority topic, a comprehensive
30 systematic review of the economic literature was conducted. For those clinical areas
31 reviewed, the information specialists used a similar search strategy as used for the
32 review of clinical evidence but with the inclusion of a health economics and quality of
33 life filter.

34

1 Each search strategy was designed to find any applied study estimating the cost or
 2 cost effectiveness of the topic under consideration. A health economist reviewed
 3 abstracts and relevant papers were ordered for appraisal.

4
 5 Published economic evidence was obtained from a variety of sources:

- 6 • Medline 1966 onwards
- 7 • Embase 1980 onwards
- 8 • NHS Economic Evaluations Database (NHS EED)
- 9 • EconLit 1969 onwards.

10 11 **3.6.1 Economic Modeling**

12 In addition to the review of the relevant clinical evidence, the GDG were required to
 13 determine whether or not the cost-effectiveness of each of the individual clinical
 14 questions should be investigated. After the clinical questions were decided, the GDG
 15 agreed which topics were an 'economic priority' for investigation. These 'economic
 16 priorities' were chosen on the basis of the following criteria, in broad accordance with
 17 the 'NICE guidelines manual (NICE 2007):

18 **Overall Relevance of the Topic**

- 19 • *The number of patients affected:* interventions affecting relatively large
 20 numbers of patients were given a higher economic priority than those affecting
 21 fewer patients
- 22 • *The health benefits to the patient:* interventions that that were considered to
 23 have a potentially significant impact on both survival and quality of life were
 24 given a higher economic priority
- 25 • *The per patient cost:* interventions with potentially high financial (cost/savings)
 26 implications were given high priority compared to interventions expected to
 27 have lower financial implications
- 28 • *Likelihood of changing clinical practice:* priority was given to topics that were
 29 considered likely to represent a significant change to existing clinical practice.

30 **Uncertainty**

- 31 • *High level of existing uncertainty:* higher economic priority was given to clinical
 32 questions in which further economic analysis was considered likely to reduce
 33 current uncertainty over cost-effectiveness. Low priority was given to clinical
 34 questions when the current literature implied a clearly 'attractive' or
 35 'unattractive' incremental cost-effectiveness ratio, which was regarded as
 36 generalisable to a UK healthcare setting
- 37 • *Likelihood of reducing uncertainty with further analyses (feasibility issues):*
 38 when there was poor evidence for the clinical effectiveness of an intervention,
 39 then there was considered to be less justification for an economic analysis to
 40 be undertaken.

41
 42 Once the economic priority clinical questions had been chosen, the next task was to
 43 perform a systematic review of the cost-effectiveness literature. When relevant
 44 published evidence was identified and considered to be of sufficient quality, this
 45 information was used to inform the recommendation for that specific clinical question.
 46 When no relevant cost-effectiveness evidence was identified, or when it was not
 47 considered to be of reasonable quality, consideration was given to building a de novo

1 economic model. This decision was made by the GDG based on an assessment of
2 the available evidence required to populate a potential economic model.

3
4 For those clinical questions where an economic model was required, the information
5 specialist performed supplemental literature searches to obtain additional data for
6 modeling. Assumptions and designs of the models were explained to and agreed by
7 the GDG members during meetings, and they commented on subsequent revisions.

8
9 The clinical question in this guideline selected for modeling was chosen because at
10 the time it was considered likely that the recommendations under consideration could
11 substantially change clinical practice in the NHS and have important consequences
12 for resource use. The details of the model are presented in the evidence review and
13 Appendix 3. During the modeling process the following general principles were
14 adhered to:

- 15 • The GDG Chair and Clinical Lead were consulted during the construction and
16 interpretation of the model
- 17 • The model was based on the best evidence from the systematic review
- 18 • Model assumptions were reported fully and transparently
- 19 • The results were subject to thorough sensitivity analysis and limitations
20 discussed
- 21 • Costs were calculated from a health services perspective.

22 23 **3.7 Agreeing the Recommendations**

24 For each clinical question the GDG were presented with a summary of the evidence
25 derived from the studies reviewed and appraised. From this information the GDG
26 were able to derive the guideline recommendations. The link between the evidence
27 and the view of the GDG in making each recommendation is made explicit in the
28 accompanying qualifying statement.

29 30 **3.8 Qualifying Statements**

31 As clinical guidelines are currently formatted, there is limited scope for expressing
32 how and why a GDG made a particular recommendation from the evidence of clinical
33 and cost-effectiveness. To make this process more transparent to the reader, the
34 NCC-C felt the need for an explicit, easily understood and consistent way of
35 expressing the reasons for making each recommendation.

36
37 The way we have chosen to do this is by writing a 'qualifying statement' to
38 accompany every recommendation and will usually cover:

- 39 • the strength of evidence about benefits and harms for the intervention being
40 considered
- 41 • the degree of consensus within the GDG
- 42 • the costs and cost-effectiveness (if formally assessed by the health economics
43 team).

44
45 Where evidence was weak or lacking the GDG agreed the final recommendations
46 through informal consensus. Shortly before the consultation period, ten key priorities
47 and 5 key research recommendations were selected by the GDG for implementation
48 and patient algorithms agreed (see pages X-X for algorithms). To avoid giving the
49 impression that higher grade recommendations are of higher priority for
50 implementation, NICE no longer assigns grades to recommendations.

4. Consultation and Validation of the Guideline

The draft of the guideline was prepared by NCC-C staff in partnership with the GDG Chair and Clinical Lead. This was then discussed and agreed with the GDG and subsequently forwarded to NICE for consultation with stakeholders.

Registered stakeholders (see Appendix 8) have one opportunity to comment on the draft guideline and this was posted on the NICE website between 31st July and 23rd September 2007. The GRP also reviewed the guideline and checked that stakeholder comments had been addressed.

Following the consultation period the GDG finalised the recommendations and the NCC-C produced the final document. This was then submitted to NICE for approval and publication on their website. The other versions of the guideline (see below) were also discussed and approved by the GDG and published at the same time.

5. Other versions of the guideline

This full version of the guideline is available to download free of charge from the NICE website (www.nice.org.uk) and the NCC-C website (www.wales.nhs.uk/nccc).

NICE also produces three versions of the prostate cancer guideline which are available from the NICE website:

- the NICE guideline, which is a shorter version of this guideline, containing the key priorities, key research recommendations and all other recommendations
- the Quick Reference Guide (QRG), which is a summary of the main recommendations in the NICE guideline. This is available in hard copy via the NHS telephone response line (0870 1555 455)
- Understanding NICE Guidance (UNG), which describes the guideline using non-technical language. It is written chiefly for men with prostate cancer but may also be useful for family members, advocates or those who care for men with prostate cancer. This is available in hard copy via the NHS telephone response line (0870 1555 455).

6. Updating the Guideline

Literature searches were repeated for all of the clinical questions at the end of the GDG development process, allowing any relevant papers published by the end of May 2007 to be considered. Future guideline updates will consider evidence published after this cut-off date.

Two years after publication of the guideline, NICE will commission a National Collaborating Centre to determine whether the evidence base has progressed significantly to alter the guideline recommendations and warrant an early update (NICE 2007). If not, the guideline will be updated approximately 4 years after publication.

7. Funding

The National Collaborating Centre for Cancer was commissioned by NICE to develop this guideline.

8. Disclaimer

The GDG assumes that healthcare professionals will use clinical judgment, knowledge and expertise when deciding whether it is appropriate to apply these guidelines. The recommendations cited here are a guide and may not be appropriate

1 for use in all situations. The decision to adopt any of the recommendations cited here
2 must be made by the practitioner in light of individual patient circumstances, the
3 wishes of the patient, clinical expertise and resources.

4

5 The NCC-C disclaims any responsibility for damages arising out of the use or non-
6 use of these guidelines and the literature used in support of these guidelines.

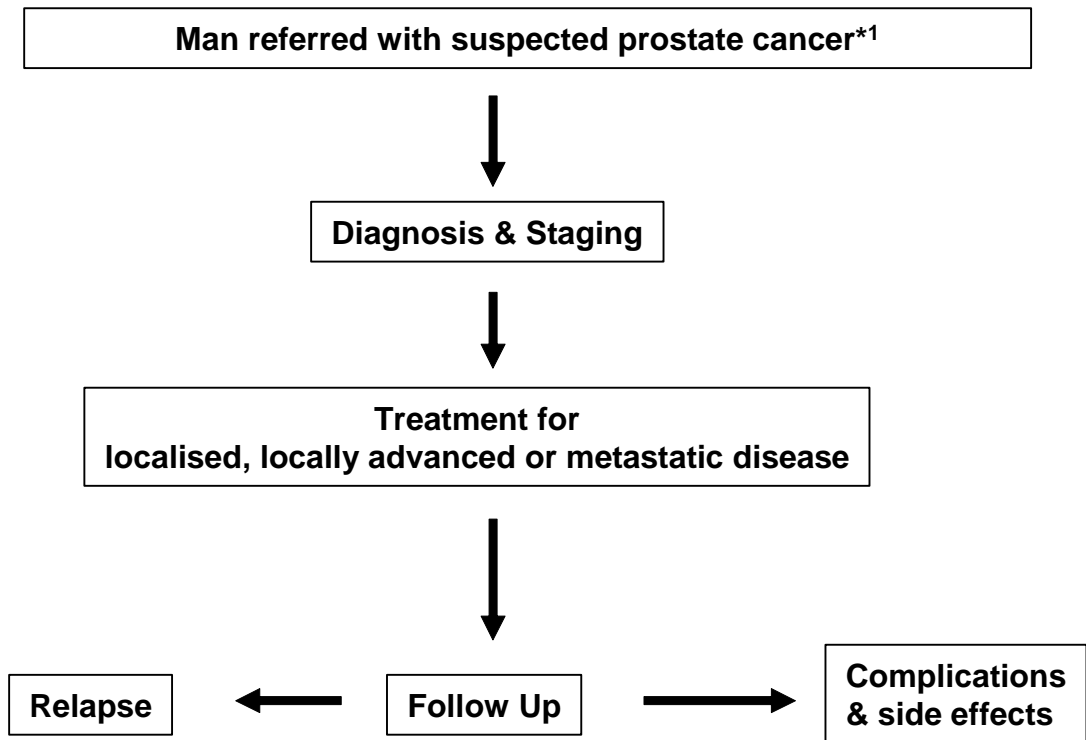
7 **References**

8 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2007) The guidelines manual.
9 London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence.

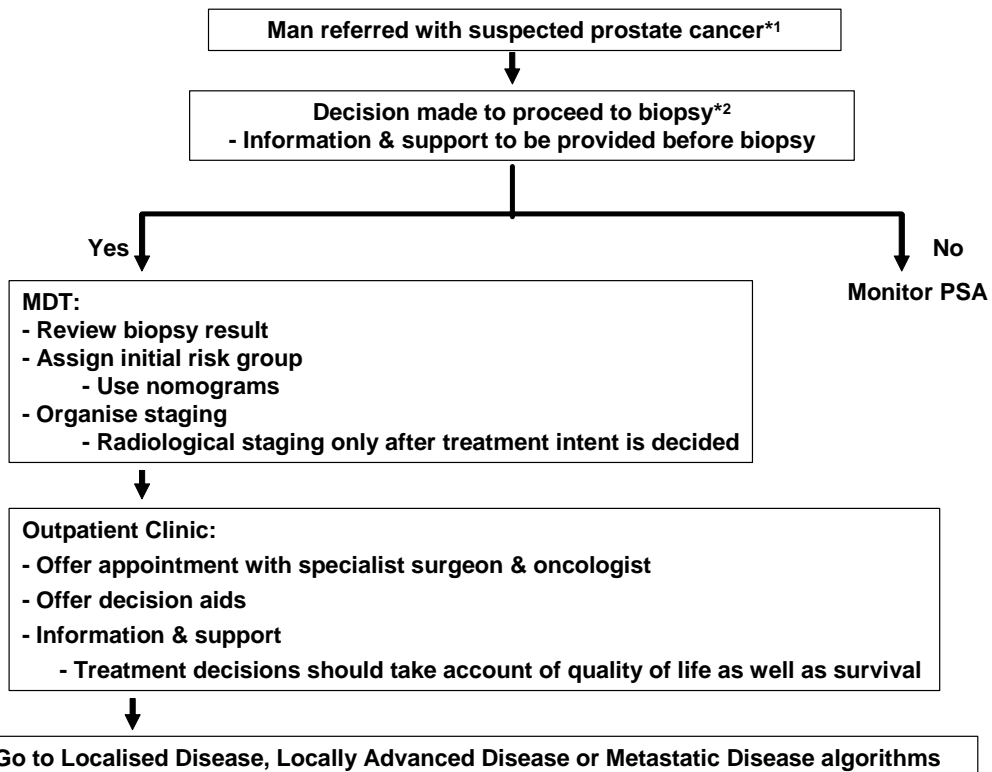
10

Algorithm – a pictorial guide to show how the guideline is structured.

Prostate Cancer Pathway



Diagnosis & staging



*1 NICE Guidance on Referral for Suspected Cancer

*2PCRMP Guidance on Prostate Biopsy

Localised Disease

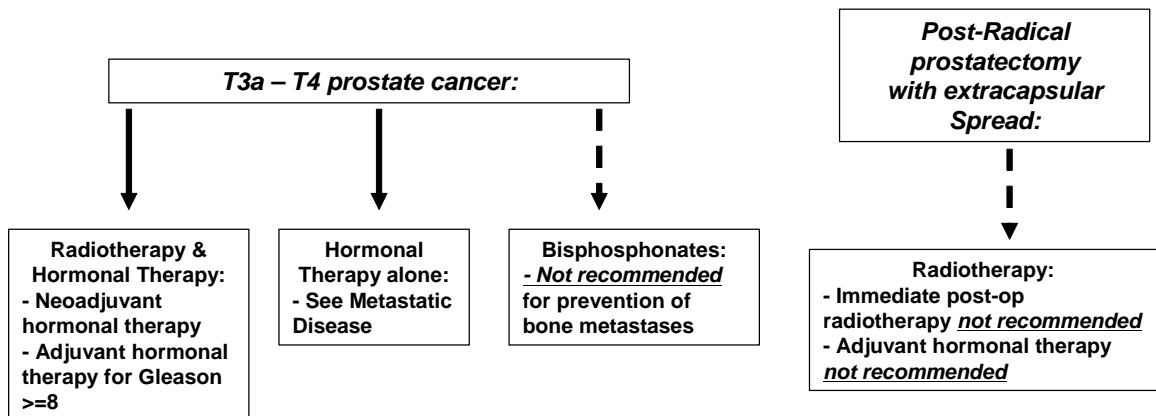
	Low-risk PSA <10ng/ml and Gleason score ≤6 and T1c or T2a	Intermediate-risk PSA 10-20ng/ml or Gleason score 7 or T2b/c	High-risk PSA >20ng/ml or Gleason score ≥ 8
Watchful Waiting	✓	?	?
Active Surveillance	✓	?	✗
Brachytherapy	?	?	✗
Radical Prostatectomy	?	?	✓
Radical Radiotherapy	?	?	✓
Cryotherapy	✗	✗	✗
HIFU	✗	✗	✗

✓	Preferred treatment
?	Treatment option – to be discussed with specialist urologist & oncologist
✗	Not recommended

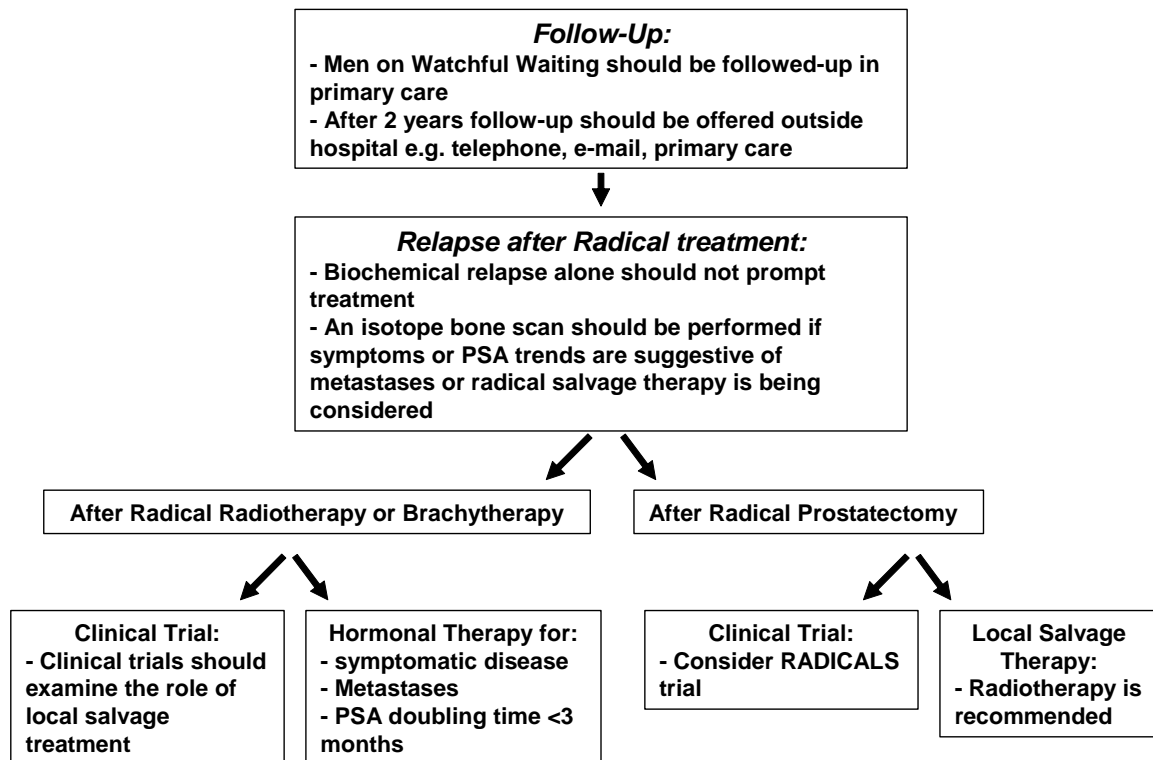
- should be treatment of choice in low-risk
- repeat biopsy at 1, 4 & 7 years
- Measure PSA velocity

- 3D conformal radiotherapy
- Minimum dose 74Gy

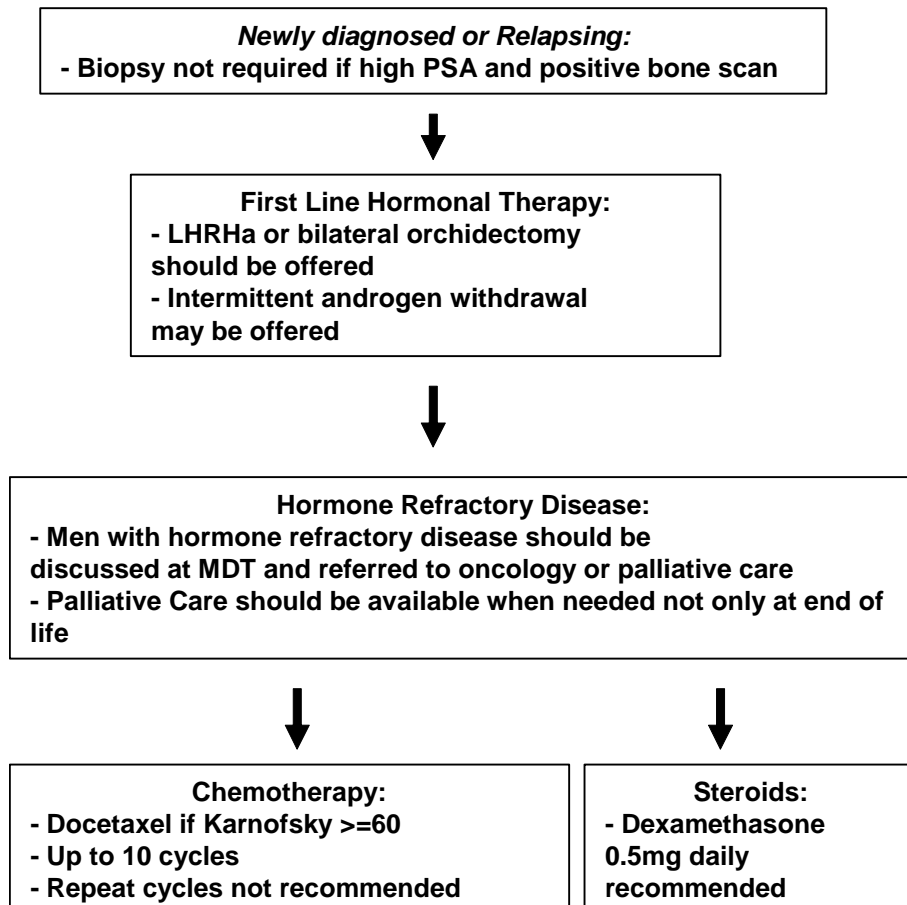
Locally Advanced Disease



Follow-Up & Relapse after Radical Treatment



Metastatic Disease



1 EPIDEMIOLOGY

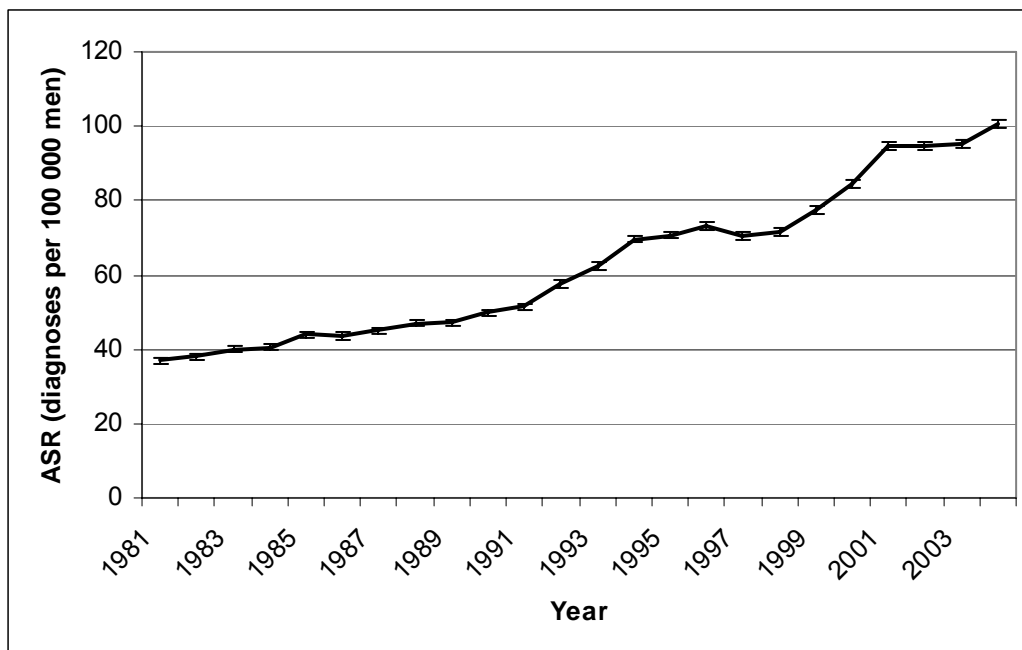
2 1.1 Introduction

3 Prostate cancer is perhaps the most enigmatic malignancy in men. If men lived long
4 enough, they would almost all die with histological evidence of the disease being
5 present (Selly et al. 1997). However, only 3% of men die as a consequence of
6 prostate cancer.

7
8 This chapter sets out the basic epidemiology of prostate cancer, its relevance to the
9 men in whom it is diagnosed and its impact on health services. The full epidemiology
10 report accompanies this guideline.

11 1.2 Incidence

12 Prostate cancer is the most common cancer in men and now makes up
13 approximately 25% of the new diagnoses of malignant cancer in men in England and
14 Wales. The incidence appears to be rising (Figure 1.1).
15
16



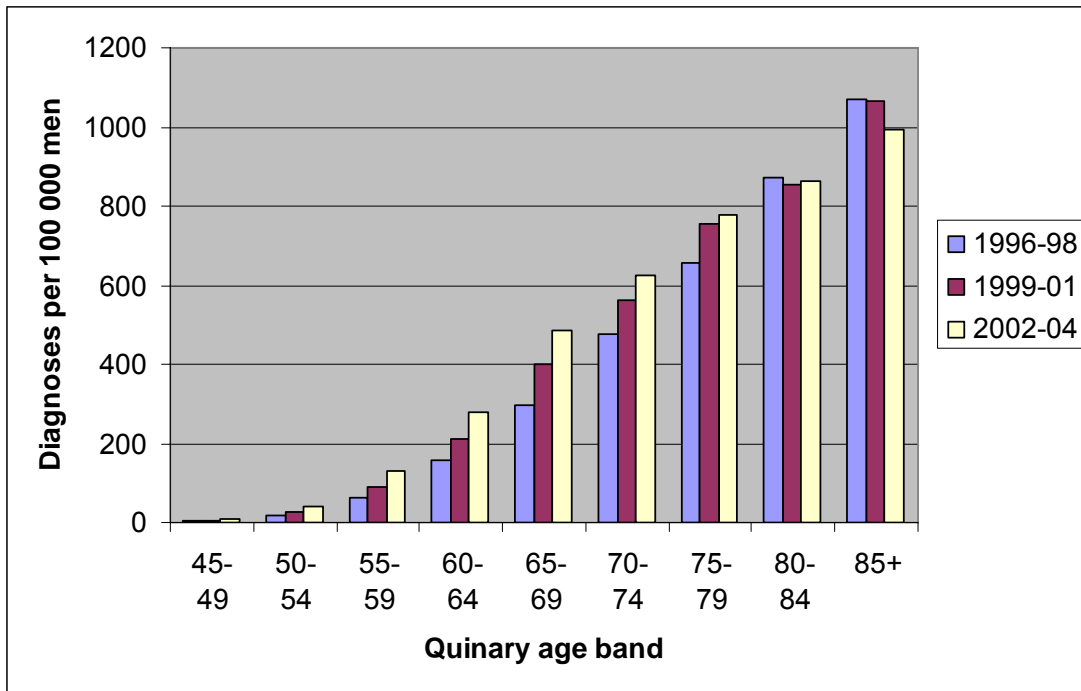
17
18 Figure 1.1, Directly Age Standardised Rate (ASR) of prostate cancer incidence in England and Wales
19 (to European standard population). Data source: Office of National Statistics MB1 series and Welsh
20 Cancer Intelligence unit and Surveillance (WCISU).

21
22 Between 1996 and 2004 the age standardised incidence rate of prostate cancer
23 increased in all cancer networks in England and Wales[‡]. In England the average
24 increase was 20% whilst in Wales it was 49%. There was a range of increases in
25 individual networks between 1% and 66%. These increased rates may result from
26 differences in local policy for PSA testing.

27
28 From age 50 the incidence increases approximately linearly with age and data
29 indicates that 1% of all men in England and Wales aged 85 or over are diagnosed
30 with prostate cancer each year (Figure 1.2). This increase is largest in the 65-69 age
31 band indicating that the uptake of PSA testing and subsequent diagnosis of cancer is
32 higher than in younger men.

[‡] Data Source: cancer registries of England and Wales

1

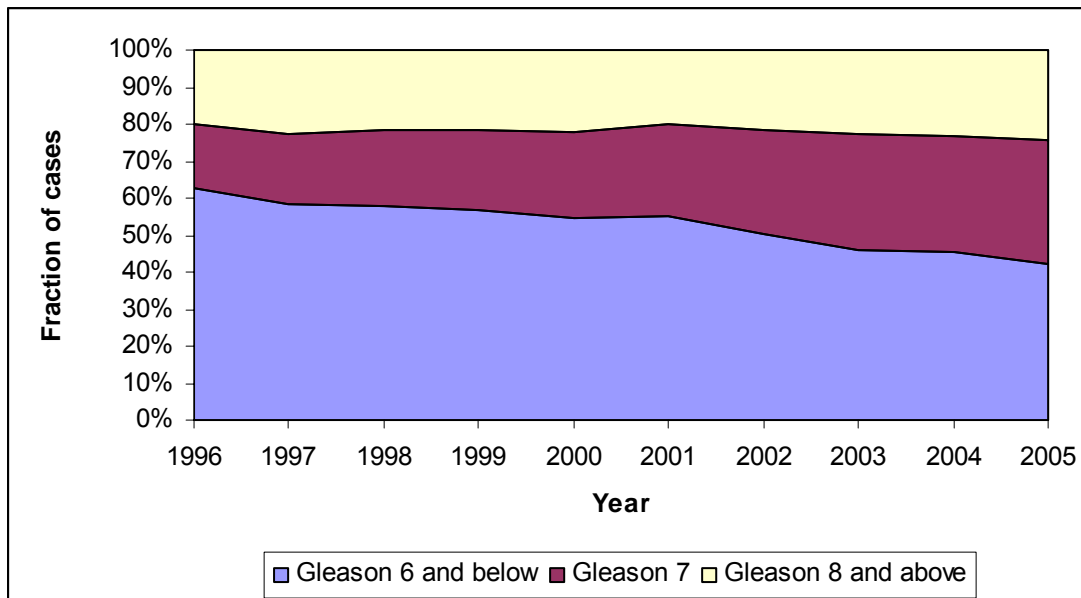


2
3

Figure 1.2 rate of diagnosis of prostate cancer by 5-year age band. Data source: cancer registries of England and Wales.

4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

Since 1996 the proportion of new diagnoses with a total Gleason score of 6 or less has decreased. This is explained by a shift in pathological reporting practice (University of Liverpool, 2003). The proportion of tumours with a Gleason score of 8 or more has remained approximately constant at between 20 and 25% but the proportion of Gleason score 7 tumours is increasing, from less than 20% in 1996 to more than 30% in 2005. (Figure 1.3)



13
14
15
16
17

Figure 1.3, Stacked plot of prostate cancer diagnoses broken down by Gleason score (where the score is recorded) for the South West of England. Data source: British Association of Urological Surgeons registry database and South West Public Health Observatory

1 There is a higher incidence of prostate cancer in the less socio-economically
 2 deprived areas, which is assumed to be due to higher rates of PSA testing among
 3 affluent men[§].

4
 5 There is strong evidence to support a higher incidence in men of African or
 6 Caribbean origin (GLOBOCAN 2002). There is a significant, 3-fold increase in the
 7 incidence of prostate cancer in black men compared to white men irrespective of the
 8 country of origin of the black man (Ben-Shlomo et al. 2007).

10 1.3 Mortality

11
 12 Prostate cancer accounts for the second highest number of deaths of any male
 13 cancer in England and Wales; below only lung cancer. Between 1996 and 2005 it
 14 comprised 13% of all cancer deaths in men.

15
 16 There has been a statistically significant decline in the age standardised mortality
 17 rate between 1993 and 2005 (Figure 1.4). However the number of deaths annually
 18 has remained roughly stable. This indicates that the declining mortality rate is
 19 counteracted by the ageing of the population.

20
 21 There is no observable effect on the mortality of the large rise in incidence since the
 22 year 2000.



24
 25 Figure 1.4, Directly Age Standardised mortality Rate (to European Standard population) and number
 26 of deaths from prostate cancer in England and Wales 1984-2005. Data source: Office of National
 27 Statistics.

28
 29 There is a variation in mortality across cancer networks in England and Wales during
 30 the period of decline in national mortality rate, although there is no consistent
 31 regional variation**.

32
 33 The majority of men who die of prostate cancer do so at an advanced age when the
 34 probability of death from other causes is high. Therefore any treatment that delays
 35 their death can plausibly reduce the apparent mortality due to prostate cancer.

[§] Data Source: cancer registries of England and Wales

** Data Source: Office of National Statistics and Ordnance Survey

1
2 Data from the American Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER)
3 database (www.seer.cancer.gov/) and the UK PROCESS study (Ben-Schlomo Y,
4 Personal communication June 2007) show that prostate cancer mortality varies
5 significantly by race. Prostate cancer mortality is higher in black men than white men,
6 driven by the markedly higher incidence.

7 8 **1.4 Survival** 9

10 In most cases prostate cancer has a long preclinical phase between onset and the
11 appearance of clinical symptoms. The survival time after a symptomatic diagnosis is
12 also long. Therefore the measured survival time for prostate cancer is easily
13 confounded by lead time bias, introduced by bringing forward the point of diagnosis
14 with the extended use of biochemical screening.

15
16 Any measure of prostate cancer survival, especially one taken on a population basis,
17 reflects changes in patient prognosis and a lead-time effect due to changes in
18 diagnostic practice. Differences in survival between countries are therefore more
19 likely to be the result of differences in diagnostic practice than the clinically relevant
20 experience of the patient.

21 22 **1.5 Diagnosis and Investigations** 23

24 Four procedures are commonly used to diagnose prostate cancer: digital rectal
25 examination (DRE), the prostate-specific antigen (PSA) blood test, trans-rectal
26 ultrasound (TRUS) and needle biopsy. DRE procedures are not well recorded in any
27 centralised data source.

28
29 The level of PSA testing is not centrally monitored in England and Wales. However,
30 several surveys of GP practices and pathology laboratories have been carried out in
31 recent years. There has been a significant increase in the rate of PSA testing from
32 1999 to 2002 (Melia et al. 2003; Melia et al. 2004). The rate of PSA testing
33 decreased with increasing socio-economic deprivation, and independently decreased
34 with increasing proportion of either black or Asian populations. Approximately 50% of
35 PSA tests are ordered by GPs with a third of these tests being in asymptomatic men.

36
37 The number of needle biopsies performed nationally is also not well recorded as they
38 are commonly performed as outpatient procedures and the data may not be reliably
39 captured. An estimate of the number of needle biopsies performed in England and
40 Wales is between 56,000 and 89,000 per year. This is equivalent to 1 million cores
41 needing histological assessment in undiagnosed men.

42 43 **1.6 Surgery** 44

45 The primary curative surgical procedure for prostate cancer is the total removal of the
46 prostate, known as prostatectomy. The number of radical prostatectomy operations
47 on men with prostate cancer more than trebled between 1997-98 and 2004-05.
48 (Figure 1.5), with a significant rise in all age groups. The number of operations is
49 rising most quickly in the 60-64 and 65-69 age groups.
50

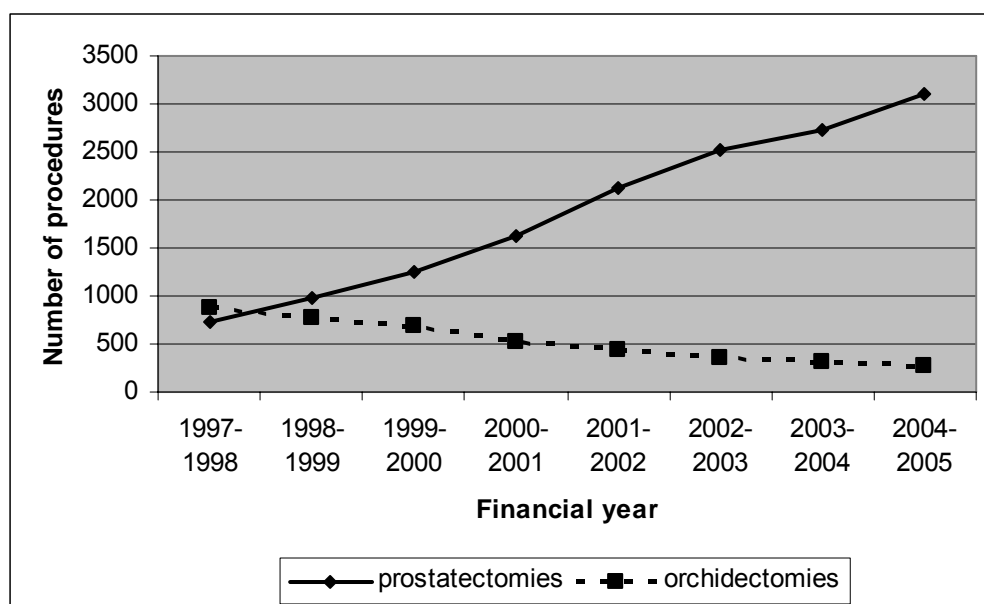


Figure 1.5, Numbers of all radical prostatectomy and orchidectomy operations on prostate cancer patients in England. Prostatectomies defined by OPCS code M61, Orchidectomies are defined by OPCS codes N05 and N06. Data source: HES data provided by NATCanSAT.

Metastatic prostate cancer can be treated by the surgical removal of the testes, otherwise known as orchidectomy (Cancer Research UK [online]). This suppresses the level of testosterone in the body and retards the growth of prostate tumours. Surgical orchidectomy is becoming a less common way of treating prostate cancer (see Figure 1.5). From 1997-98 to 2003-04 the number of operations which took place on men with metastatic prostate cancer reduced by 75%. Medical castration, using hormonal therapy, has replaced orchidectomy in most cases.

There is a 4-fold regional variation in the radical prostatectomy rate between cancer networks. After age-standardising the rates of radical prostatectomy, there is still a large variation which confirms that the observed trends are not due to age difference between networks or changes in the age structure of the population.

The majority of prostatectomies recorded on the British Association of Urological Surgeons (BAUS) cancer registry are performed on men with a Gleason score of 6 or 7 (i.e. lower grade tumours)^{††}. This fraction has remained approximately constant (linear regression shows no significant trend) even while the number of prostatectomies has doubled.

The total number of consultants to which surgical episodes containing either a prostatectomy or cystectomy, in patients diagnosed with prostate or bladder cancer, are registered is approximately constant over the eight years of recorded data. There is a significant drop in the number of consultants with fewer than ten such episodes between 1997-98 and 2004-05, from 86% to 56%. However this is a linear trend with no obvious effect following the publication of the NICE guidance on 'Improving outcomes in urological cancers' (NICE 2002). It is therefore likely that the increasing total volume of prostatectomies is driving the reduction in the number of consultants performing a small number of procedures per year. The number of consultants performing these procedures has stayed remarkable consistent, between 371 and 387.

^{††} Data source: BAUS cancer registry

1.7 Hormonal Therapy

Hormonal therapy prescriptions have increased dramatically since the mid-1980s^{##}. Anti-androgen prescriptions rose from zero prior to 1983 to approximately 150,000 per annum in 2004. Prescriptions for luteinising hormone-releasing hormone agonists (LHRHa) increased from zero prior to 1986 to over 300,000 in 2004. These increases are due to medical castration, using hormonal therapy, replacing orchidectomy in most cases. Oestrogen prescriptions declined between the 1970s and mid 1990s, falling to a minimum of 14,000 prescriptions in 1996 but increased between 1996 and 2004.

Hormonal therapy constitutes the biggest single area of cancer drug spending. The total cost of all prescriptions recorded by the NHSBSA PPD in 2004 was £8.1 billion (Department of Health 2004). Of this £292 million was recorded under BNF section 8, "Malignant disease & immunosuppression" with hormone treatment for prostate cancer making up approximately 40%.

1.8 Radiotherapy

The large number of radiotherapy procedures carried out on patients with Gleason score 6 and 7 tumours suggests that radical radiotherapy is a more common treatment than prostatectomy^{§§}. Clear differences in the patterns of dose and fractionation occur across NHS trusts, indicating a variation in practice^{***}.

1.9 The Findings of Cancer Peer Review of Urology Cancer Teams in England 2004-2007

Following the publication of the NICE guidance on 'Improving outcomes in urological cancers' (NICE 2002), a process was put in place in England (as for other cancer sites covered by Service Guidance from the Department of Health or NICE) to monitor the progress made in implementing the changes in service organisation and delivery which had been recommended. Each cancer network in England and all the designated local and specialist urological cancer teams were reviewed by a team of clinical peers between November 2004 and May 2007.

The findings of these reviews were that the implementation of the guidance was slow and incomplete with almost one third of networks not having compliant action plans for the implementation of the guidance. This was mostly due to the designated specialist urology cancer teams serving populations of less than 1 million. Some networks have still not submitted agreed plans. There was also frequent failure to comply with the key recommendation about surgeons performing fewer than five radical prostatectomies per year.

Local urology cancer teams performed particularly poorly for attendance of core members at multidisciplinary team (MDT) meetings, cover arrangements, referral guidelines, patient experience and service improvement. One quarter of teams did not have complete core membership, most notably for clinical oncology (11%).

^{##} Data Source: IMS Health Medical Data Index, London

^{§§} Data Source: South West Public Health Observatory and RES dataset provided by NatCanSAT

^{***} Data Source: RES data provided by NATCanSAT

1 Oncology attendance at MDT meetings was deficient in 23% of teams. Attendance of
2 radiologists and pathologists was also relatively low.

3
4 Overall levels of compliance with the guidance were lower for urology teams than for
5 all other reviewed cancer sites (e.g. breast, colorectal and gynaecology).

6
7 The average workload of clinical nurse specialists (CNS) in areas excluding urology
8 is 110 new cases per year per CNS while in Urology it is 203 new cases per year per
9 CNS (Honor et al. 2006).

10
11 Since the key recommendations of the 2002 Improving Outcomes in Urological
12 Cancers guidance there has been a rapid increase in the number of patients accrued
13 to clinical trials in 2003-4, which can be attributed mainly to the creation of the NCR
14 and the NCRN.

15 16 **References**

17 Ben-Shlomo Y *et al.* (2007) The Risk of Prostate Cancer amongst Black Men in the
18 United Kingdom: The PROCESS Cohort Study. *European Urology* Mar 1: [Epub
19 ahead of print]

20 Cancer Research UK. Orchidectomy for Prostate Cancer. Available online at
21 www.cancerhelp.org.uk/help/default.asp?page=2875

22 Department of Health (2004) Prescription Cost Analysis: England 2004 Department
23 of Health. Available online at
24 [www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsStatistics/DH_4](http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsStatistics/DH_4107504)
25 [107504](http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsStatistics/DH_4107504) [accessed 8 April 2005]

26 GLOBOCAN (2002) Data held by the Descriptive Epidemiology Groups of IARC and
27 provided by *CANCERmondial*. Available online at www-dep.iarc.fr/

28 Honor C, Trevett P (2006) Clinical Nurse Specialist Workforce Mapping. Presented
29 at the National Prostate Cancer Conference 2006, London.

30 www.ncrn.org.uk/index.htm

31 Melia et al. (2003) Study to assess the rate of PSA testing in men with no previous
32 diagnosis of prostate cancer. Report to the Department of Health, available online at:
33 www.cancerscreening.nhs.uk/prostate/psa-mapping.doc

34 Melia et al. (2004) Rates of prostate-specific antigen testing in general practice in
35 England and Wales in asymptomatic and symptomatic patients: a cross-sectional
36 study. *BJU International*, 94: 51-56.

37 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2002) Improving Outcomes in
38 Urological Cancers. *NICE cancer service guidance*. London: National Institute for
39 Health and Clinical Excellence

40 Selley S, Donovan J, Faulkner A, Coast J, Gillatt D (1997) Diagnosis, management
41 and screening of early localised prostate cancer. *Health Technology Assessment*. 1
42 (2)

43 University of Liverpool (2003) Towards a Consensus Protocol on Prostate Biopsies:
44 Indications, Techniques and Assessment. Conference Report. 6th June 2003. p21
45 Available at www.cancerscreening.nhs.uk/prostate/conference-report.pdf

46

2. COMMUNICATION AND PATIENT CENTRED CARE

2.1 Introduction

Information and care should be centred on the needs of individual men as they arise from prostate cancer or its treatment, as well as the needs of their partners and carers.

Many of the basic communication and patient care needs of men with prostate cancer are addressed in other guidance on urological cancers and palliative care from The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE 2002; 2004), The Welsh Assembly Government (WAG 2005) and The Department of Health (Department of Health 2004a; 2004b)

This previous published guidance from NICE and DH identifies many communication and information needs which apply to men with prostate cancer. There is evidence from the National Audit Office (National Audit Office 2005a; 2005b) that these recommendations remain relevant, but have been particularly poorly implemented in this group.

The information needs of men with prostate cancer include:

- basic anatomy and pathology to enable men and their carers to understand how prostate cancer might affect them
- aims, risks and likely effects of proposed diagnostic procedures
- the likely range of impact and rate of progression of prostate cancer
- potential treatment options, including the probability of improved survival or symptom reduction. This needs to convey known benefits, uncertainties about benefits, known risks and potential short and long-term adverse effects
- reasons why a man might decide to opt for or not opt for radical treatment, whether provisionally or for the long term
- the effect which treatment for prostate cancer may have on a man's quality of life, including his relationship with his partner
- reasons for not offering interventions which men might expect
- urological, oncological, radiological, palliative care and other relevant services
- other sources of information, possible self help action and sources of support.

A significant number of older men have prostate cancer and many of their needs have been identified and addressed in the standards of the 'National Service Framework for Older People' (Department of Health 2001).

Men's support needs are known to differ from women's. Men appear to see support mainly in terms of good information. Although men are reluctant to access support services, this may depend on factors such as age. Some men welcome 'counselling'. However there are indications that men prefer support groups, not so much for emotional support, but to impart and receive information.

Partners are perceived as the main care-giver and may experience more distress than men with prostate cancer. Partners are thought to be more avid information seekers than men with prostate cancer and while beneficial it is also known to be confusing. Partners are known to be eager to help in the decision making process,

1 but at the same time this is also known to lead to panic and an inability to search for
2 information.

3 **2.2 Communicating with Men with Prostate Cancer, their Partners and** 4 **Carers**

5 This section focuses particularly on the way in which specific information is
6 communicated and how men's ability to make decisions about their treatment options
7 may be enhanced and their choices facilitated.

8 Diagnosis, staging or treatment of a man with prostate cancer requires consideration
9 at the outset of how adequate information and communication between the man and
10 the teams looking after him is to be achieved.

11 Members of the urological cancer multidisciplinary team (MDT) are responsible for
12 communicating specialist information to men with prostate cancer and are required to
13 identify a *“key worker” for each individual patient* (Department of Health 2004a). All
14 men will require a range of information about their disease and its treatment but their
15 communication needs and preferences will differ, depending on individual factors
16 such as age and cultural and ethnic background.

17 As men's priorities, needs and concerns change, so does their need for appropriate
18 information. It is unlikely that a single source or form of information is enough to meet
19 all these needs at all stages. Effective communication and information sharing is
20 therefore a continuing responsive, adaptive process.

21 There are a range of communication methods available that help create the 'well
22 informed man', (and his informed carers) although it is uncertain from the evidence
23 how much time it takes and there is little consensus on specific resources. Written
24 and verbal interventions, group seminars, audio tape and telephone interventions,
25 video and other multi media methods, and support groups are all useful interventions.
26 Materials most favourably reviewed in the literature will periodically need updating.
27 Incomplete or incomprehensible information impairs patient experience, outcomes
28 and satisfaction. The evidence shows that risks, benefits, side effects and clear
29 comparisons of different treatment options are often not well explained in information
30 resources.

31 Some treatment options confront men with choices which they find particularly
32 difficult and many men appreciate information given through some form of 'expert
33 system', which enables them to focus on the issues most relevant to their values and
34 wishes, and to bypass information about issues which are of less importance to
35 them. The importance of shared decision making, incorporating the individual values
36 and attitudes of men with prostate cancer in the choice of care and treatment, was
37 identified in the NICE Guidance on 'Improving Outcomes in Urological Cancers'
38 (NICE 2002).

39 There is considerable variation in the amount and type of information needed to
40 make a treatment decision, particularly in localised prostate cancer, and little
41 agreement on the need for most individual items. Thus there is a risk that, the
42 treatment decisions which each man makes when there is a choice between different
43 management options may be more a reflection of the information he has been
44 offered than of his personal values and wishes.

1 Recommendation

- 2 • Recommendations on communication and patient centred care made in the
3 two service guidance documents: 'Improving Outcomes in Urological Cancers'
4 (NICE 2002) and 'Improving Supportive and Palliative Care for Adults with
5 Cancer' (NICE 2004) should be followed throughout the patient journey.

6 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on consensus of the GDG
7 and supported by the NAO report and the findings of cancer peer review in England.

8 Recommendations

- 9 • Men with prostate cancer should receive individualised information tailored to
10 their own needs. This information should be given by a clinician (consultant or
11 specialist nurse) and may be supported by written and visual media.
- 12 • Men should be offered advice about how to access information and support
13 from the internet (including "UK Prostate Cancer Link" [http://www.prostate-](http://www.prostate-link.org.uk/)
14 [link.org.uk/](http://www.prostate-link.org.uk/)) and other media, local and national cancer information services,
15 and from cancer support groups.
- 16 • When choosing or recommending information resources, healthcare
17 professionals should ensure that their content is clear reliable and up to date.
- 18 • Healthcare professionals should seek and act on feedback from men with
19 prostate cancer and their carers who use these resources.
- 20 • Clinical staff caring for men with prostate cancer should ascertain the extent to
21 which the man wishes to be involved in decision making and ensure that they
22 have sufficient information to enable them to do so.

23 **Qualifying Statement:** There was GDG consensus in support of these
24 recommendations, based on evidence of unmet need.

25 Clinical Evidence

26 Evidence from a systematic review (Echlin, 2002) indicates that if provided with
27 detailed, up to date and broad information about prostate cancer men gain
28 substantial knowledge about their disease and the management of it. There was little
29 evidence about how informational provision affects a man's satisfaction with his
30 treatment choice. The information provided to men varies in quality: the evidence
31 suggests that although high quality information is available it is often outweighed by
32 the greater quantity of low quality material.

33 Health Economic Evaluation

34 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
35 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
36 reviewed.

37 2.3 Decision Support

38 Since both the nature of the disease and the benefits of treatment may be uncertain,
39 decision making in prostate cancer treatment is complex. In view of this complexity,
40 there is growing interest in, and awareness of, structured decision aids for men
41 considering prostate cancer treatments. Such aids may be of particular use in helping
42 men who have localised prostate cancer or are considering hormonal therapy.

1 Decision aids are evidence based tools designed to be delivered by appropriately
 2 trained professionals to support and enable people to participate in decisions about
 3 their healthcare by:

- 4 • making explicit the existence and nature of the specific choices facing the
 5 individual patient
- 6 • providing specific, individualised information to help each patient understand
 7 the nature and probable risks, benefits and outcomes of their treatment
 8 options
- 9 • guiding the patient through each step in making a decision, taking into account
 10 his or her own beliefs and values.

11 Such aids are not a substitute for a comprehensive communication process with men
 12 and their families.

13 **Recommendation**

- 14 • A validated, up-to-date decision aid is recommended for use in all urology
 15 cancer teams. It should be offered to men with localised prostate cancer when
 16 making treatment decisions, by healthcare professionals trained in its use^{†††}.

17 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation was based on a combination of high
 18 quality evidence and GDG consensus.

19 **Clinical Evidence**

20 Evidence about the effectiveness of decision aids comes from a systematic review of
 21 randomised trials in a range of conditions, including prostate cancer (O'Connor *et al.*
 22 2003), and from observational studies (Brink *et al.* 2000; Feldman-Stewart *et al.*
 23 2001; Feldman-Stewart *et al.* 2004; Holmes-Rovner *et al.* 2005; Schapira *et al.*
 24 1997). Knowledge of disease and treatment options and participation in the decision
 25 process were increased with decision aids, but there was no evidence of an effect on
 26 satisfaction with decisions, anxiety, or health outcomes.

27 **Health Economic Evaluation**

28 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
 29 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
 30 reviewed.

31 **Recommendation**

- 32 • All relevant management options recommended in this guideline should be
 33 discussed whether or not they are available through local services.

34 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on GDG consensus alone.

^{†††} a decision aid specific for men with localised prostate cancer is in development and publication is expected in 2008.

1 **2.4 Specific Problems**

2 Management of prostate cancer carries a number of specific challenges in
3 communication, arising from uncertainty over treatment benefits, potential for a
4 profound impact from treatment-related adverse events and the often extended
5 course of the disease.

6 Radical treatment of prostate cancer carries the threat of significant disturbance to
7 quality of life and functioning. The development of incontinence, bowel toxicity and
8 temporary or permanent damage to sexual function and enjoyment are all recognised
9 as possible sequelae of prostate cancer treatments and are addressed in Chapter 4.
10 For some men the prospect of these effects may be less acceptable than the disease
11 itself – especially when there is uncertainty about whether prostate cancer is a threat
12 to their longer term survival. Decisions about treatment options rely on men being
13 sufficiently well informed at each stage of their illness to understand the choices they
14 face and with sufficient time to consider the options carefully.

15 **Recommendation**

- 16 • Mechanisms should be put in place to ensure that, over prolonged periods of
17 time, men and their primary care providers can gain access to specialist
18 services.

19 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on GDG consensus alone.

20 **2.4.1 Prostate Cancer and the Effect it May Have on Men's Sense of** 21 **Masculinity**

22 Being diagnosed with cancer and the specific nature and side effects of many of the
23 treatments used in prostate cancer can have an effect on a man's sense of
24 masculinity. This will apply to factors such as sexual function, urinary problems,
25 bowel function, pain, fatigue and psychological distress. This impact on 'masculinity'
26 is not, in general, a focus of attention in prostate cancer research. However by
27 assessing it in the context of men's accounts and theoretical considerations, it is
28 possible to conclude that the impact of this aspect of prostate cancer may be
29 profound for men. The effects of having prostate cancer will also, in some
30 circumstances, depend on variables that include stage of disease and treatment
31 received. These issues are discussed in more detail in Appendix A of the evidence
32 review.

33 While there is a paucity of work that would illuminate how information received and
34 decision making impacts on masculinity or vice versa, some men will not trade quality
35 for quantity and may wish to forgo the 'best' treatment from the healthcare
36 professional's perspective: rather they would prefer to keep their potency for
37 example. There is evidence to suggest that men who have been treated with
38 hormonal therapies, retrospectively regret that treatment decision.

39 Little is known about the issues surrounding masculinity in ethnic minority groups and
40 the impact prostate cancer may have on homosexual men.

41

1 **Recommendations**

- 2 • Men should be adequately informed about the effects of prostate cancer and
3 the treatment options on their sexual function, appearance, continence and
4 aspects of self-image. Healthcare professionals should support men and their
5 partners to make treatment decisions taking into account the effects on quality
6 of life as well as survival.
- 7 • Men and their partners should have the opportunity to discuss psychosexual
8 issues with an appropriately skilled healthcare professional at any stage of the
9 illness and its treatment.

10 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on qualitative evidence and
11 GDG consensus.

12 **Clinical Evidence**

13
14 Manne and co-workers (Manne et al. 2004) reported that the effects of a structured
15 group psychosocial intervention were modest and psychological distress was not
16 affected. Another study (Thornton et al. 2004) reported partial support for the
17 effectiveness of a single-session communication intervention on patient social/family
18 wellbeing and partners' general stress.

19
20 Researchers were unable to define the concept of masculinity well enough to enable
21 a literature search. The GDG commissioned an expert position paper on this topic
22 (see Appendix A of the evidence review).

23 **Health Economic Evaluation**

24 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
25 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
26 reviewed.

27 **Research Recommendation**

- 28 • More research should be undertaken into the sense of loss of masculinity in
29 men receiving treatment for prostate cancer.

30 **References**

31 Brink, S. G., Birney, A. J. & McFarren, A. E. (2000) Charting your course: formative
32 evaluation of a prostate cancer treatment decision aid. *International Electronic*
33 *Journal of Health Education*, 2000 Jan 1; 3: 44-54.

34 Department of Health (2001) National Service Framework for Older People: Modern
35 standards and service models. London: Department of Health

36 Department of Health (2004a) Manual for Cancer Services 2004. London:
37 Department of Health

38 Department of Health (2004b) The NHS Cancer Plan and the new NHS: Providing a
39 patient-centred service. London: Department of Health

- 1 Echlin, KN. & Rees, C. E. (2002) Information needs and information-seeking
2 behaviors of men with prostate cancer and their partners: a review of the literature
3 *Cancer Nursing* 25(1): 35-41
- 4 Feldman-Stewart, D., Brundage, M. D. & Van, M. L. (2001) A decision aid for men
5 with early stage prostate cancer: theoretical basis and a test by surrogate patients.
6 *Health Expectations*, 4: 221-234.
- 7 Feldman-Stewart, D., Brundage, M. D., Van, M. L. & Svenson, O. (2004) Patient-
8 focussed decision-making in early-stage prostate cancer: insights from a cognitively
9 based decision aid. *Health Expectations*, 2004 Jun; 7: 126-141.
- 10 Holmes-Rovner, M., Stableford, S., Fagerlin, A., Wei, J. T., Dunn, R. L., Ohene-
11 Frempong, J., Kelly-Blake, K. & Rovner, D. R. (2005) Evidence-based patient choice:
12 a prostate cancer decision aid in plain language. *BMC Medical Informatics &*
13 *Decision Making*, 5: 16.
- 14 Manne S, Babb J, Pinover W, Horwitz E, Ebbert J (2004) Psychoeducational group
15 intervention for wives of men with prostate cancer. *Psycho oncology* 13: 37-46.
- 16 National Audit Office (2005a) Tackling Cancer: Improving the patient journey.
17 London: National Audit Office
- 18 National Audit Office (2005b) The NHS Cancer Plan: a progress report. London:
19 National Audit Office
- 20 National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2002) Improving Outcomes in Urological
21 Cancers. *NICE cancer service guidance*. London: National Institute for Clinical
22 Excellence
- 23 National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2004) Improving Supportive and Palliative
24 Care for Adults with Cancer. *NICE cancer service guidance*. London: National
25 Institute for Clinical Excellence.
- 26 O'Connor, A. M., Stacey, D., Rovner, D., Holmes-Rovner, M., Tetroe, J., Llewellyn-
27 Thomas, H., Entwistle, V., Rostom, A., Fiset, V., Barry, M. & Jones, J. (2003)
28 Decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions.[update in
29 Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2003;(2):CD001431; PMID: 12804407]. [Review] [152
30 refs]. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, CD001431.
- 31 Schapira, M. M., Meade, C. & Nattinger, A. B. (1997) Enhanced decision-making: the
32 use of a videotape decision-aid for patients with prostate cancer. *Patient*
33 *Educ.Couns.*, 1997 Feb; 30: 119-127.
- 34 Thornton, A. A., Perez, M. A. & Meyerowitz, B. E. (2004) Patient and partner quality
35 of life and psychosocial adjustment following radical prostatectomy. *Journal of*
36 *Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 11: 15-30.
- 37 Welsh Assembly Government (2005) Wales National Cancer Standards. Wales:
38 Welsh Assembly Government
- 39

3. DIAGNOSIS AND STAGING OF PROSTATE CANCER

3.1 When to Biopsy

Men who are ultimately diagnosed with prostate cancer usually present in primary care with no clear symptoms of the disease. NICE has issued guidance to GPs on the referral of men who are suspected of having prostate cancer (NICE 2005).

It has been normal practice that men who are found to have an abnormal serum prostate specific antigen (PSA) * level should have a prostate biopsy. For example, the UK Prostate Cancer Risk Management Program states “if your PSA is definitely raised, a prostate biopsy is required to determine whether cancer is present”. This policy, combined with the waiting time targets from the Department of Health in England (ref), means that it is common for men to have a prostate biopsy as a matter of course, within days of referral with an elevated PSA. The current system allows little time or opportunity for men to be involved in the decision whether or not to have a prostate biopsy. The justification for performing biopsy in men with an abnormal PSA is that they are at high risk of prostate cancer. However, data from the Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial (PCPT) (ref) have demonstrated that prostate cancer is also a common finding on biopsy in men with a *normal* PSA level. The data from this large study provide a strong argument against the use of an arbitrary PSA threshold to select men for prostate biopsy.

The aim of prostate biopsy is not to detect each and every prostate cancer. After all, the PCPT demonstrates that the majority of prostate cancers are in men with a normal PSA level. The aim of prostate biopsy is actually to detect those prostate cancers with the potential for causing harm. It has been estimated that, of asymptomatic men in whom prostate cancer is detected by prostate biopsy following PSA measurement, around 50% (Draisma et al. 2003) do not require active treatment. Men with clinically insignificant prostate cancers that were destined never to cause any symptoms, or affect their life expectancy, do not benefit from knowing that they have the ‘disease’. Indeed, the detection of clinically insignificant prostate cancer should be regarded as an (under-recognised) adverse effect of biopsy.

In order to identify men who are most suitable for prostate biopsy, there is a need to identify a group at high risk, not just of prostate cancer, but of *significant* prostate cancer. Several large studies have analysed the clinical characteristics associated with the finding of higher grade (usually defined as Gleason score ≥ 7) prostate cancer on biopsy. Factors significantly associated with high grade cancer were: PSA level, smaller prostate volume, abnormal digital rectal examination (DRE) findings, age, and black African and black Caribbean ethnicity, whereas a previous negative prostate biopsy reduced this risk. These factors have been incorporated into predictive models, based on North American data, that allow an individualised assessment of the risk of high grade disease on biopsy. In the above studies, the chance of finding higher grade prostate cancer on biopsy was not related to the presence or absence of lower urinary tract symptoms.

* For more information on PSA please see Appendix 1

1 Recommendations

- 2 • The man's decision whether or not to proceed to prostate biopsy should be
3 informed by the PSA level, estimate of prostate size, digital rectal examination
4 (DRE) findings, age, ethnicity, and comorbidities, together with any history of a
5 previous negative prostate biopsy. The serum PSA level alone should not
6 automatically lead to a prostate biopsy.
- 7 • Men (and their partners) should be given information, support and adequate
8 time to decide whether or not they wish to undergo prostate biopsy.
9 The information should include an explanation of the risks (including the
10 significant increased chance of having to live with a prostate cancer diagnosis)
11 and the potential benefits of prostate biopsy.

12 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are based on evidence from well
13 designed North American observational studies and GDG consensus that they
14 should lead to an appropriate change in clinical practice.

15 Clinical Evidence

16 The literature search found no directly relevant studies comparing immediate and
17 delayed biopsy in men with a raised PSA level. A number of observational studies
18 (Borden *et al.* 2006 ; Garzotto *et al.* 2005; Krejcarek *et al.* 2007; Nam *et al.* 2006;
19 Thompson *et al.* 2006) reported risk factors for high grade prostate cancer in men
20 referred for sextant prostate biopsy. Odds of high grade cancer were related to age,
21 PSA, DRE result, prior negative biopsy, black ethnicity, lower urinary tract symptoms
22 and prostate volume.

23 Health Economic Evaluation

24 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
25 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
26 reviewed.

27 Recommendation

- 28 • If the clinical suspicion of prostate cancer is high, because of a high PSA
29 value and evidence of multiple bone metastases (positive isotope bone scan
30 or sclerotic metastases on plain radiographs), prostate biopsy for histological
31 confirmation should be omitted, unless this is required as part of a clinical trial.

32 **Qualifying statement:** There was strong GDG consensus supported by case series
33 evidence that the above combination allows a sufficiently high probability of an
34 underlying prostate cancer to justify a diagnosis of metastatic prostate cancer without
35 a biopsy.

36 Clinical Evidence

37 No directly relevant studies were identified. Evidence from two case series
38 (Vandecandelaere *et al.* 2004; Katagiri *et al.* 1999) suggested the prevalence of
39 prostate cancer in men presenting with bone metastases and unknown primary
40 tumour was around 30%. Case series (Wymenga *et al.* 2001; Gleave *et al.* 1996;
41 O'Sullivan *et al.* 2003; Lin *et al.* 1999; Oesterling 1993) provide evidence about PSA

1 concentration and bone scan results in men with histologically confirmed (but
2 untreated) prostate cancer. These studies allow estimates of the sensitivity of various
3 PSA cut-offs for the detection of prostate cancer in men with bone metastases. A
4 systematic review (Eichler *et al.* 2006) identified 36 studies with data about adverse
5 effects associated with prostate biopsy. The most common were minor bleeding,
6 voiding difficulties and minor infection.

7 **Health Economic Evaluation**

8 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
9 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
10 reviewed.

11 **3.2 Histological Diagnosis**

12 The diagnosis of prostate cancer is usually made with ultrasound-guided prostate
13 biopsy. Some men will have a diagnosis confirmed on the tissue obtained at trans-
14 urethral resection of the prostate (TURP) or holmium laser resection of the prostate
15 (HoLeP).

16 The Prostate Cancer Risk Management Programme (PCRMP) has commissioned a
17 review which recommends a multiple core sampling technique involving at least ten
18 cores covering all parts of the gland and guided by transrectal ultrasound.

19 The Gleason score of the tumour biopsy and the extent of cancer within the prostate
20 are relevant to the choice of therapy as well as the outcome for the man.

21 **Recommendations**

- 22 • Prostate biopsy should be carried out following the procedure recommended
23 by the Prostate Cancer Risk Management Programme document (PCRMP
24 2006)
- 25 • The results of all prostate biopsies should be reviewed by a urological cancer
26 multidisciplinary team (MDT). Men should only be re-biopsied after an MDT
27 review of the risk characteristics including life expectancy, PSA, DRE, and
28 prostate volume.

29 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations, are the absence of reliable
30 research evidence, are based on GDG consensus.

31 **Clinical Evidence**

32 Observational studies, and theoretical considerations, suggest that re-biopsy will
33 detect prostate cancer in some men with an initially negative prostate biopsy. Five of
34 these studies reported multivariate analyses of predictive factors for positive repeat
35 biopsy (Djavan *et al.* 2000; Eggener *et al.* 2005; Fowler, Jr. *et al.* 2000; Lopez-
36 Corona *et al.* 2003; Mian *et al.* 2002) but there was disagreement on which factors
37 predict re-biopsy outcome. There is evidence, however, that the odds of high grade
38 prostate cancer are reduced if a man has previously had a negative biopsy.

39

1 **Health Economic Evaluation**

2 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
3 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
4 reviewed.

5 **3.3 Staging Classification for Prostate Cancer**

6 The TNM classification (see Appendix 2) is used to stage prostate cancer. It
7 describes the extent of the primary *tumour* (T stage), the absence or presence of
8 spread to nearby lymph *nodes* (N stage) and the absence or presence of distant
9 spread, or *metastasis* (M stage).

10 The *clinical stage* is determined from information that is available without surgery.
11 The *pathologic stage* is based on the surgical removal and histological examination
12 of the entire prostate gland, the seminal vesicles and surrounding structures and, if
13 relevant, pelvic lymph nodes.

14 The management of prostate cancer will depend on the TNM stage of the disease as
15 well as both biochemical information (e.g. PSA) and pathological information (e.g.
16 Gleason score), which have prognostic value. The optimum treatment for a man with
17 prostate cancer requires an assessment of the risk of metastatic spread as well as
18 the risk of local recurrence. For this, the results of imaging need to be assessed in
19 the light of information from clinical nomograms (see section 3.4 for information on
20 nomograms).

21 **3.3.1 Imaging at the Time of Diagnosis for Prostate Cancer**

22 Men newly diagnosed with prostate cancer can initially be stratified into those for
23 whom radical treatment is a possibility and those for whom it is not appropriate. The
24 decision about treatment intent will be based on the man's life expectancy, his
25 values, and the anticipated clinical course of the prostate cancer (for more
26 information see Chapter 4).

27 **Recommendations**

- 28 • The provisional treatment intent (radical or not) should be determined before
29 decisions on imaging are made.
- 30 • Imaging is not routinely recommended for men in whom no radical treatment is
31 intended.

32 **Qualifying Statement:** There was GDG consensus, in the absence of any research
33 evidence, that this will reduce the amount of inappropriate investigation. The cost
34 effectiveness of routine MRI could not be concluded (see health economic evaluation
35 under 3.3.2).

36 Both the clinical presentation and the treatment intent influence the decision about
37 when and how to image the individual. The risk of recurrence of prostate cancer after
38 definitive local treatment is the basis for the stratification of men with localised
39 prostate cancer into risk groups: low, intermediate and high (see Chapter 4 for
40 information on risk groups). The recommendations for imaging are similarly based on
41 these prognostic groups.

- 1 • Low-risk - PSA <10ng/ml, Gleason score ≤6, and clinical stage T1c or T2a
- 2 • Intermediate-risk - PSA 10-20ng/ml, or Gleason score 7, or clinical stage T2b
- 3 or T2c
- 4 • High-risk - PSA >20ng/ml, or Gleason score 8-10, or clinical stage T3.

5 Imaging may inform the choice between different radical treatments (for example by
6 determining whether the cancer has extended beyond the prostatic capsule). It also
7 assists in the identification of metastatic disease thereby leading to more appropriate
8 treatment options.

9 **3.3.2 Imaging for T-Staging and N-Staging**

10 The T-stage involves the assessment of the local extent of the primary tumour in the
11 prostate and its relationship to surrounding structures. Using imaging to distinguish
12 between T1 and T2 cancers does not usually affect treatment. But if radical treatment
13 is being considered, it is important to decide whether a tumour is T2 (confined within
14 the prostate) or T3 (spread outside the prostate).

15 Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) is now the most accurate and commonly used
16 imaging technique for T-staging men with prostate cancer. Many of the original
17 publications used now outdate MRI technology, and the accuracy reported for MRI is
18 improving, typically with endorectal coil imaging at 1.5 Tesla.

19 After transrectal prostate biopsy, intra-prostatic haematoma can affect image
20 interpretation for at least four weeks.

21 Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy (MRS) is an experimental technique based on
22 the concentration of metabolites such as choline and citrate in the prostate gland.
23 Prostate cancer alters the concentration of these metabolites and this may be used
24 to find areas of tumour activity.

25 It is important to know the nodal status of men with localised disease, as the spread
26 of cancer to the pelvic lymph nodes will affect the choice of treatment. Partin's Tables
27 (Partin *et al.* 2001) are the most commonly used clinical nomograms for determining
28 the risk of nodal spread (see section 3.4 for information on nomograms).

29 Currently, imaging is of some value for N-Staging because Computed Tomography
30 (CT) and conventional MRI rely on size criteria to assess the likelihood of metastatic
31 spread to the lymph nodes. Neither technique can characterise the internal
32 architecture of an enlarged node. Newer MRI contrast agents such as
33 superparamagnetic iron oxide (SPIO) may improve the overall specificity of MRI for
34 evaluating lymph nodes but are not yet routinely available.

35 **Recommendation**

- 36 • Pelvic imaging is not recommended for men with low-risk disease (T1c or T2a,
37 PSA ≤10ng/ml, Gleason score ≤6).

38 **Qualifying statement:** There was GDG consensus that imaging would not affect the
39 treatment decision.

40

1 Recommendation

- 2 • CT imaging of the pelvis is not recommended for men with intermediate-risk
3 disease (PSA 10-20ng/ml, or Gleason score 7, or clinical stage T2b or T2c).

4 **Qualifying statement:** there is not enough evidence to support the routine use of CT
5 in men with intermediate-risk disease.

6 Recommendation

- 7 • Men with high-risk disease (T3, PSA>20ng/ml, or Gleason score 8-10) being
8 considered for radical treatment should have pelvic imaging with either MRI, or
9 CT if contraindicated.

10 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from observational studies to support
11 making this recommendation.

12 Recommendation

- 13 • MRS is not recommended except in the context of a clinical trial.

14 **Qualifying statement:** There is no evidence to support routine use of MRS.

15 Clinical Evidence

16 No studies measuring the impact of diagnostic imaging on patient outcomes were
17 found; instead most studies were of diagnostic test accuracy.

18
19 Two studies (reviewed in National Institute for Clinical Excellence 2002) showed
20 better staging accuracy with MRI than with CT. Other systematic reviews have
21 considered the staging accuracy of MRI (Engelbrecht *et al.* 2002b; Sonnad *et al.*
22 2001) and CT (Abuzallouf *et al.* 2004) separately.

23 There was contradictory evidence, from small observational studies, about the
24 benefit of adding of MRS to MRI.

25 There was consistent evidence, from observational studies, that MRI tumour stage
26 was a prognostic factor for PSA relapse (Cheng *et al.* 2003; D'Amico *et al.* 2000;
27 Nguyen *et al.* 2004; Pucar *et al.* 2004). One of the studies (D'Amico *et al.* 2000),
28 however, concluded that MRI tumour staging only added clinically meaningful
29 information for men at intermediate pre-treatment risk of PSA relapse. MRI tumour
30 stage did not stratify PSA failure risk well enough to guide clinical decision making for
31 other patients.

33 Health Economic Evaluation

34
35 The literature review identified 587 potentially relevant papers. Five papers were
36 obtained for appraisal of which 1 full economic evaluation was subsequently
37 identified (Jager 1994). The evaluation looked at the use of MRI for men with
38 localised prostate cancer for whom radical therapy was intended compared with no
39 MRI, in people with Gleason scores of between 5 and 7.

40
41 The economic evaluation was undertaken by building a decision tree, and using the
42 results from a (non-systematic) literature review to identify the necessary information.

1 Expected life years and quality-adjusted life years (QALYs) were used to measure
2 treatment benefits, and the analysis was performed from a US healthcare
3 perspective. The authors made a number of assumptions including the following: MRI
4 was performed in addition to other staging methods in patients considered
5 candidates for radical prostatectomy; and extracapsular disease on MRI
6 contraindicated surgery. However, it should be noted that no randomised studies
7 were identified in which the therapeutic efficacy of MRI staging as a prelude to radical
8 treatment had been assessed, future costs and health benefits were not discounted
9 and no price year was provided.

10
11 For the surgical strategy based on clinical staging life expectancy was 12.60 years
12 and the number of QALYs was 12.52. For the MRI strategy the life expectancy was
13 12.59 and the number of QALYs was 12.53. Thus, the differences in clinical effect
14 were marginal. The total costs amounted to US\$11,669 for the surgical strategy
15 based on clinical staging and US\$10,568 for the MRI strategy. The incremental cost
16 per life-year gained was approximately US\$110,000 if clinical staging alone was used
17 instead of MRI and clinical staging. However, when QALYs were used to measure
18 health outcomes, MRI became the more effective and less costly option. Sensitivity
19 analysis showed that these results were sensitive to a number of assumptions,
20 including the prior probability of extracapsular disease. The authors concluded that
21 the cost-effectiveness of MRI was yet to be established in this patient group, which
22 seems to be a reasonable interpretation of the results.

23 No further economic analysis was undertaken because it was thought unlikely that
24 subsequent cost-effectiveness estimates would be any more robust given the quality
25 of available clinical information.

26 **3.3.3 Imaging for M-Staging**

27 Isotope bone scintigraphy can be used to look for bone metastases at the time of
28 presentation. The positivity rate for bone scans increases with PSA or Gleason
29 score.

30 **Recommendation**

- 31 • Isotope bone scintigraphy is not routinely recommended for men with low-risk
32 disease.

33 **Qualifying Statement:** This recommendation is supported by case series evidence
34 and will reduce unnecessary investigation.

35 Two systematic reviews (Abuzallouf *et al.* 2004 National Institute for Clinical
36 Excellence 2002) looked at the role of radioisotope bone scans in the staging of men
37 with newly diagnosed prostate cancer. Abuzallouf and co-workers (Abuzallouf *et al.*
38 2004) summarised bone scan results by serum PSA level in men with newly
39 diagnosed prostate cancer. Serum PSA level and risk of a positive bone scan were
40 strongly correlated. The other review (National Institute for Clinical Excellence 2002)
41 concluded that PSA level was the best means of identifying those at risk of a positive
42 bone scan and that men with PSA less than 10ng/ml were unlikely to have a positive
43 bone scan.

44

1 **Health Economic Evaluation**

2 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
3 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
4 reviewed.

5 **Recommendation**

- 6 • Bone scanning should be performed when hormonal therapy is being deferred
7 in high-risk, asymptomatic men.

8 **Qualifying Statement:** In the absence of any evidence there was GDG consensus
9 that making this recommendation would reduce the risk of patients developing spinal
10 cord compression.

11 **Clinical Evidence**

12 Searches found no direct evidence about the influence of imaging on the timing of
13 systemic treatment or frequency of clinical follow-up in men for whom radical therapy
14 is not intended. Small case series (Noguchi *et al.* 2003; Yamashita *et al.* 1993;
15 Knudson *et al.* 1991) reported outcomes in men with positive bone scans at
16 presentation. Two of these series (Noguchi *et al.* 2003; Knudson *et al.* 1991) found
17 extensive disease on bone scan was an adverse prognostic factor for survival. There
18 is observational evidence (Bayley, 2004; Venkitaraman, 2007) that extensive disease
19 on bone scan is an independent risk factor for spinal cord compression in men
20 without functional neurological impairment.

21 **Health Economic Evaluation**

22 The literature search identified 213 potentially relevant papers. One of these studies
23 was obtained for appraisal but it did not contain an economic evaluation. No
24 economic modelling was attempted because there was considered to be insufficient
25 clinical information on which to base a model.

26 **3.3.4 Role of PET in Staging Prostate Cancer**

27 Positron-Emission Tomography (PET) imaging using the radiopharmaceutical agent
28 18-FDG does not reliably show primary prostate cancer. This is because of the
29 relatively low metabolic activity in tumours which are slow-growing and because the
30 radiopharmaceutical agent accumulates in the bladder, obscuring the prostate.
31 Newer positron-emitting tracers are under evaluation. These include 11-C acetate
32 which has a high specificity for prostate cancer, and 11-C choline.

33 **Recommendation**

- 34 • PET imaging for prostate cancer is not recommended in routine clinical
35 practice.

36 **Qualifying statement:** There was a lack of evidence to support the use of PET
37 imaging.

38

1 3.4 Nomograms

2 A nomogram is a statistically derived tool which is used to describe the likely course
3 of a disease using known variables such as diagnostic findings, age and treatment
4 options. Nomograms have been developed from outcome data on large groups of
5 men with prostate cancer. Using predictive factors such as T-stage, Gleason score,
6 PSA and histology results they can be used to estimate the risk of metastatic spread,
7 lymph node involvement or recurrence following treatment. There is a wide variation
8 in incidence rates between North America and the UK so that a nomogram
9 developed in a screened population in the USA may not be wholly relevant to an
10 unscreened population in this country and therefore need to be used with caution.
11 Most nomograms in current use have been developed on patient groups outside the
12 UK.

13 Recommendation

- 14 • Nomograms should be used by doctors and patients in partnership to:
 - 15 a. aid decision making
 - 16 b. predict biopsy results
 - 17 c. predict pathological stage
 - 18 d. predict risk of treatment failure.

19 **Qualifying Statement:** There is good quality evidence to support this
20 recommendation.

21 Recommendation

- 22 • Where nomograms are used the reliability, validity and limitations of the
23 prediction should be clearly explained, with appropriate support.

24 **Qualifying statement:** In the absence of evidence on improved outcomes, there was
25 GDG consensus that nomograms are of value in explaining the probable clinical
26 course to patients.

27 Clinical Evidence

28 There is good evidence from observational studies (see evidence review), largely
29 from outside the UK, that nomograms can accurately identify risks for men with
30 prostate cancer. Most nomograms have been developed for use in men with clinically
31 localised disease who are candidates for radical prostatectomy, and these are also
32 the most widely validated. Although only one UK validation study was found, some
33 nomograms have been validated in other western European countries.

34 Health Economic Evaluation

35 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
36 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
37 reviewed.

38

1 Research Recommendations

- 2 • More research is recommended into the use of MRI in men with intermediate-
3 risk disease (T2b or T2c, or PSA 10-20ng/ml, or Gleason score 7) to inform
4 management decisions.
- 5 • More research is recommended into the use of MRS in prostate cancer.

6 References

- 7 Abuzallouf, S., Dayes, I. & Lukka, H. (2004) Baseline staging of newly diagnosed
8 prostate cancer: a summary of the literature (DARE provisional record). *Journal of*
9 *Urology*, 171: 2122-2127.
- 10 Bayley, A. J., Catton, C. N., Haycocks, T., Kelly, V., Alasti, H., Bristow, R., Catton, P.,
11 Crook, J., Gospodarowicz, M. K., McLean, M., Milosevic, M. & Warde, P. (2004) A
12 randomized trial of supine vs. prone positioning in patients undergoing escalated
13 dose conformal radiotherapy for prostate cancer. *Radiotherapy & Oncology*, 70: 37-
14 44.
- 15 Borden, L. S., Wright, J. L., Kim, J., Latchamsetty, K. & Porter, C. R. (2006) An
16 abnormal digital rectal examination is an independent predictor of Gleason ≥ 7
17 prostate cancer in men undergoing initial prostate biopsy: a prospective study of 790
18 men. *BJU Int* 99(3):559-63
- 19 Cheng, G. C., Chen, M. H., Whittington, R., Malkowicz, S. B., Schnall, M. D.,
20 Tomaszewski, J. E. & D'Amico, A. V. (2003) Clinical utility of endorectal MRI in
21 determining PSA outcome for patients with biopsy Gleason score 7, PSA ≤ 10 ,
22 and clinically localized prostate cancer. *Int J Radiat. Oncol Biol. Phys.*, 55: 64-70.
- 23 D'Amico, A. V., Whittington, R., Malkowicz, B., Schnall, M., Schultz, D., Cote, K.,
24 Tomaszewski, J. E. & Wein, A. (2000) Endorectal magnetic resonance imaging as a
25 predictor of biochemical outcome after radical prostatectomy in men with clinically
26 localized prostate cancer. *J Urol*, 164: 759-763.
- 27 Djavan, B., Zlotta, A., Remzi, M., Ghawidel, K., Basharkhah, A., Schulman, C. C. &
28 Marberger, M. (2000) Optimal predictors of prostate cancer on repeat prostate
29 biopsy: a prospective study of 1,051 men. *J Urol*, 163: 1144-1148.
- 30 Draisma G, Boer R, Otto SJ, van der Crujisen IW, Damhuis RAM, Schröder FH, de
31 Koning HJ (2003) *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 95(12): 868-878
- 32 Eggener, S. E., Roehl, K. A. & Catalona, W. J. (2005) Predictors of subsequent
33 prostate cancer in men with a prostate specific antigen of 2.6 to 4.0 ng/ml and an
34 initially negative biopsy. *J Urol*, 174: 500-504.
- 35 Eichler, K., Hempel, S., Wilby, J., Myers, L., Bachmann, L. M. & Kleijnen, J. (2006)
36 Diagnostic value of systematic biopsy methods in the investigation of prostate
37 cancer: a systematic review. [Review] [42 refs]. *J Urol*, 175: 1605-1612.
- 38 Engelbrecht, M. R., Jager, G. J., Laheij, R. J., Verbeek, A. L., van Lier, H. J. &
39 Barentsz, J. O. (2002) Local staging of prostate cancer using magnetic resonance
40 imaging: a meta-analysis. *Eur Radiol.*, 12: 2294-2302.
- 41 Fowler, J. E., Bigler, S. A., Miles, D. & Yalkut, D. A. (2000) Predictors of first repeat
42 biopsy cancer detection with suspected local stage prostate cancer. *J Urol*, 163: 813-
43 818.

- 1 Garzotto, M., Collins, L., Priest, R., Spurgeon, S., Hsieh, Y. C., Beer, T. M. & Mori, M.
2 (2005) Nomogram for the prediction of high-grade prostate cancer on
3 ultrasoundguided needle biopsy. *J Clin Oncol*, 23: 408S.
- 4 Gleave, M. E., Coupland, D., Drachenberg, D., Cohen, L., Kwong, S., Goldenberg, S.
5 L. & Sullivan, L. D. (1996) Ability of serum prostate-specific antigen levels to predict
6 normal bone scans in patients with newly diagnosed prostate cancer. *Urology*, 47:
7 708-712.
- 8 Jager, GJ et al. Prostate cancer staging: Should MR imaging be used?- A decision
9 analytic approach. *Radiology*, 2002. 215(2) p. 445-451.
- 10 Katagiri, H., Takahashi, M., Inagaki, J., Sugiura, H., Ito, S. & Iwata, H. (1999)
11 Determining the site of the primary cancer in patients with skeletal metastasis of
12 unknown origin: a retrospective study. *Cancer*, 86: 533-537.
- 13 Knudson, G., Grinis, G., Lopez-Majano, V., Sansi, P., Targonski, P., Rubenstein, M.,
14 Sharifi, R. & Guinan, P. (1991) Bone scan as a stratification variable in advanced
15 prostate cancer. *Cancer*, 68: 316-320.
- 16 Krejcarek, S. C., Chen, M. H., Renshaw, A. A., Loffredo, M., Sussman, B. & D'Amico,
17 A. V. (2007) Prediagnostic prostate-specific antigen velocity and probability of
18 detecting high-grade prostate cancer. *Urology*, 69: 515-519.
- 19 Lin, K., Szabo, Z., Chin, B. B. & Civelek, A. C. (1999) The value of a baseline bone
20 scan in patients with newly diagnosed prostate cancer. *Clin Nucl Med*, 24: 579-582.
- 21 Lopez-Corona, E., Ohori, M., Scardino, P. T., Reuter, V. E., Gonen, M. & Kattan, M.
22 W. (2003) A nomogram for predicting a positive repeat prostate biopsy in patients
23 with a previous negative biopsy session.[erratum appears in J Urol. 2004
24 Jan;171(1):360-1]. *J Urol*, 170: 1184-1188.
- 25 Mian, B. M., Naya, Y., Okihara, K., Vakar-Lopez, F., Troncoso, P. & Babaian, R. J.
26 (2002) Predictors of cancer in repeat extended multisite prostate biopsy in men with
27 previous negative extended multisite biopsy. *Urology*, 60: 836-840.
- 28 Nam, R. K., Toi, A., Klotz, L. H., Trachtenberg, J., Jewett, M. A., Loblaw, A., Pond, G.
29 R., Emami, M., Sugar, L., Sweet, J. & Narod, S. A. (2006) Nomogram prediction for
30 prostate cancer and aggressive prostate cancer at time of biopsy: utilizing all risk
31 factors and tumor markers for prostate cancer. *Can J Urol*, 13 Suppl 2: 2-10.
- 32 National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2002). *Guidance on cancer services -*
33 *improving outcomes in urological cancers. The manual*. London: National Institute for
34 Clinical Excellence.
- 35 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2005) Referral guidelines for
36 suspected cancer. *NICE clinical guideline no. 27*. London: National Institute for
37 Health and Clinical Excellence
- 38 Nguyen, P. L., Whittington, R., Koo, S., Schultz, D., Cote, K. B., Loffredo, M.,
39 Tempany, C. M., Titelbaum, D. S., Schnall, M. D., Renshaw, A. A., Tomaszewski, J.
40 E. & D'Amico, A. V. (2004) Quantifying the impact of seminal vesicle invasion
41 identified using endorectal magnetic resonance imaging on PSA outcome after
42 radiation therapy for patients with clinically localized prostate cancer. *Int J*
43 *Radiat.Oncol Biol.Phys.*, 59: 400-405.
- 44 Noguchi, M., Kikuchi, H., Ishibashi, M. & Noda, S. (2003) Percentage of the positive
45 area of bone metastasis is an independent predictor of disease death in advanced
46 prostate cancer. *Br J Cancer*, 88: 195-201.

- 1 Oesterling, J. E. (1993) Using PSA to eliminate the staging radionuclide bone scan.
2 Significant economic implications. *Urol Clin North Am*, 20: 705-711.
- 3 O'Sullivan, J. M., Norman, A. R., Cook, G. J., Fisher, C. & Dearnaley, D. P. (2003)
4 Broadening the criteria for avoiding staging bone scans in prostate cancer: a
5 retrospective study of patients at the Royal Marsden Hospital. *BJU Int*, 92: 685-689.
- 6 Partin AW, Mangold LA, Lamm DM, et al. (2001) Contemporary update of prostate
7 cancer staging nomograms (Partin Tables) for the new millennium. *Urology* 58:843
- 8 Prostate Cancer Risk Management Programme (2006) Undertaking a trans-rectal
9 ultrasound guided biopsy of the prostate. ISBN 9781844630417. Available online at
10 <http://www.cancerscreening.nhs.uk/prostate/pcrmp01.pdf>
- 11 Pucar, D., Koutcher, J. A., Shah, A., Dyke, J. P., Schwartz, L., Thaler, H.,
12 Kurhanewicz, J., Scardino, P. T., Kelly, W. K., Hricak, H. & Zakian, K. L. (2004)
13 Preliminary assessment of magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging in predicting
14 treatment outcome in patients with prostate cancer at high risk for relapse. *Clinical*
15 *Prostate Cancer*, 3: 174-181.
- 16 Sonnad, S. S., Langlotz, C. P. & Schwartz, J. S. (2001) Accuracy of MR imaging for
17 staging prostate cancer: a meta-analysis to examine the effect of technologic
18 change. *Acad Radiol.*, 8: 149-157.
- 19 Thompson, I. M., Ankerst, D. P., Chi, C., Goodman, P. J., Tangen, C. M., Lucia, M.
20 S., Feng, Z., Parnes, H. L. & Coltman, C. A. (2006) Assessing prostate cancer risk:
21 results from the Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial.[see comment]. *J Natl Cancer Inst*,
22 98: 529-534.
- 23 Vandecandelaere, M., Flipo, R. M., Cortet, B., Catanzariti, L., Duquesnoy, B. &
24 Delcambre, B. (2004) Bone metastases revealing primary tumors. Comparison of two
25 series separated by 30 years. *Joint Bone Spine*, 71: 224-229.
- 26 Venkitaraman, R., Sohaib, S. A., Barbachano, Y., Parker, C. C., Khoo, V., Huddart,
27 R. A., Horwich, A. & Dearnaley, D. P. (2007) Detection of Occult Spinal Cord
28 Compression with Magnetic Resonance Imaging of the Spine. *Clin Oncol (R*
29 *Coll.Radiol.)*.
- 30 Wymenga, L. F., Boomsma, J. H., Groenier, K., Piers, D. A. & Mensink, H. J. (2001)
31 Routine bone scans in patients with prostate cancer related to serum prostate-
32 specific antigen and alkaline phosphatase. *BJU Int*, 88: 226-230.
- 33 Yamashita, K., Denno, K., Ueda, T., Komatsubara, Y., Kotake, T., Usami, M., Maeda,
34 O., Nakano, S. & Hasegawa, Y. (1993) Prognostic-Significance of Bone Metastases
35 in Patients with Metastatic Prostate-Cancer. *Cancer*, 71: 1297-1302.

1 **4. LOCALISED PROSTATE CANCER**

2 **4.1 Introduction**

3 Prostate cancer may follow an aggressive course, similar to that of other cancers.
4 However, many prostate cancers are indolent, and will have no impact on health,
5 even without treatment. The natural history of prostate cancer diagnosed in the
6 1970s and 1980s has been well-described. For example, Albertsen et al. (2005),
7 reporting the long-term outcome of watchful waiting, found that the 15-year prostate
8 cancer mortality for men with a Gleason score of 6 was 18-30%, while their 15-year
9 risk of death from other causes was 25-59%.

10 The detection of prostate cancers by prostate specific antigen (PSA)^{†††} testing has
11 become common only in the last ten years. PSA testing results in over-detection of
12 cases that might not otherwise have been detected and their long-term natural
13 history is not yet known. It also introduces a lead time (the time difference between
14 detection by PSA and clinical presentation in the absence of PSA testing), which may
15 be of the order of 10 years or more. It follows that the natural history of PSA-detected
16 prostate cancer will appear more favourable than that of clinically detected prostate
17 cancer from the pre-PSA testing era. This is an important consideration for men
18 faced with the choice between conservative management and curative treatment. In
19 comparison with those with clinically detected disease, men with PSA-detected
20 cancers will have longer to endure any adverse effects of curative treatment, and
21 longer to wait for any beneficial effect on survival to emerge.

22 **4.2 Predictive Factors and Risk Groups**

23 Several factors have been shown to predict the risk of recurrence after treatment of
24 localised prostate cancer. These include the Gleason score, the serum PSA level,
25 and the T stage. These predictive factors have been used to classify localised
26 prostate cancer into risk groups, specifically:

- 27 • Low-risk - PSA <10 ng/ml, Gleason score ≤6, and clinical stage T1c or T2a
- 28 • Intermediate-risk - PSA 10-20 ng/ml, or Gleason score 7, or clinical stage
29 T2b or T2c
- 30 • High-risk - PSA >20 ng/ml, or Gleason score 8-10, or clinical stage T3 (see
31 Chapter 6 for more information on high-risk localised disease).

32 **Recommendation**

- 33 • Urological cancer multidisciplinary teams (MDTs) should assign a risk
34 category to all newly diagnosed men with localised prostate cancer.

35 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on evidence from well-
36 designed cohort studies.

37

38

††† For more information on PSA please see Appendix 1

1 **Clinical Evidence**

2 There is consistent evidence from observational studies that biopsy, Gleason score
3 and pre-treatment serum PSA level are independent risk factors for lymph node
4 involvement, treatment failure and death from prostate cancer, in men with clinically
5 localised prostate cancer. In these studies clinical tumour stage was an independent
6 predictor of treatment failure but was not consistently associated with death from
7 prostate cancer or lymph node involvement.

8 **Health Economic Evaluation**

9 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
10 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
11 reviewed.

12 **4.3 Treatment Decision Making**

13 Given the uncertain, and often indolent, natural history of the disease, and the wide
14 range of management options, treatment decision-making in localised prostate
15 cancer is difficult. This is further complicated by the conflicting opinions of different
16 doctors, and the risk of significant treatment-related toxicity. The NICE Guidance on
17 Improving Outcomes in Urological Cancers (NICE 2002) recommended a
18 multidisciplinary approach involving urologists, oncologists and specialist nurses to
19 provide decision support but there is evidence that implementation is incomplete (see
20 Chapter 1).

21 As well as the clinical factors which define the risk group, the man's life-expectancy
22 and his personal values need to be considered. For example, a fit 60 year old man
23 with a typical life-expectancy of 25 years might be more likely to opt for a curative
24 treatment than an older man with significant co-morbidities and/or a shorter life-
25 expectancy. Similarly, a man who wanted to have the best chance of living as long as
26 possible, and was prepared to accept side-effects, might be more likely to opt for
27 curative treatment than a man who placed a higher value on his quality of life (see
28 Chapter 2).

29 **4.4 Initial Treatment Options**

30 The treatment options for men with localised prostate cancer are:

- 31 • watchful waiting
- 32 • active surveillance
- 33 • radical prostatectomy (open, laparoscopic or robotically assisted laparoscopic)
- 34 • external beam radiotherapy (EBRT)
- 35 • brachytherapy
- 36 • High intensity focussed ultrasound (HIFU)
- 37 • Cryotherapy.

38 **Watchful Waiting**

39 Traditional watchful waiting involves the conscious decision to avoid treatment unless
40 symptoms of progressive disease develop. Those men who do develop symptoms of
41 progressive disease are usually managed with hormonal therapy. This approach is

1 most often offered to older men, or those with significant co-morbidities who are
2 thought unlikely to have significant cancer progression during their likely natural life
3 span.

4 **Recommendation**

- 5 • Men who have chosen a watchful waiting regimen with no curative intent
6 should normally be followed up in primary care. Investigations should not be
7 performed unless symptoms occur and treatment is appropriate.

8 **Qualifying statement:** In the absence of evidence there was GDG consensus that
9 this recommendation would avoid unnecessary investigations.

10 **Active Surveillance**

11 The aim of active surveillance is to avoid unnecessary treatment of men with indolent
12 cancers, by only treating those whose cancers show early signs of progression.
13 Whereas traditional watchful waiting in elderly or infirm men aims to avoid any
14 treatment at all for as long as possible and excludes radical treatment options, active
15 surveillance of younger, fitter men tries to target curative treatment on those likely to
16 benefit. Men on active surveillance are monitored by serial PSA estimations, and
17 repeat prostate biopsy. Those who have evidence of disease progression, in terms of
18 the rate of rise of PSA or adverse findings on repeat biopsy, are offered curative
19 treatment. Active surveillance is therefore an option for men with low-risk disease
20 who are fit for radical treatment in the event of 'disease progression'.

21 **Recommendation**

- 22 • Men with localised low-risk prostate cancer should not routinely be offered
23 immediate radical therapy. They should be offered watchful waiting or active
24 surveillance, depending on their life expectancy and values.

25 **Qualifying statement:** There is no reliable evidence of the clinical or cost-
26 effectiveness of radical therapy in this group of men. There was GDG consensus that
27 this recommendation would reduce over-treatment.

28 **Recommendations**

- 29 • Active surveillance is strongly recommended for men with a clinical stage T1c,
30 a Gleason score 3+3, and with a PSA density $<0.15\text{ng/ml}^2$ and less than 50%
31 of biopsy cores involved ($<10\text{mm}$ of any 1 core involved).
- 32 • Active surveillance can be recommended for other men with low-risk disease.
- 33 • Active surveillance should be discussed as an option with men who have
34 intermediate-risk disease.
- 35 • Active surveillance is not recommended for men with high-risk localised
36 disease.

37
38 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are based on longitudinal studies of
39 the risk of clinical progression or death from prostate cancer. There was GDG
40 consensus that these recommendations would reduce the risk of over-treatment.

41

1 Recommendations

2 For men on active surveillance the following regimen is recommended:

- 3 • To reduce the sampling error associated with prostate biopsy, men who are
4 candidates for active surveillance should have had at least 10 biopsy cores.
- 5 • Repeat prostate biopsy should be performed at 1, 4 and 7 years, in
6 accordance with the ProSTART trial protocol (Klotz online).
- 7 • PSA should be tested every 3 months during the first 2 years and 6 monthly
8 thereafter.
- 9 • PSA velocity should be estimated by linear regression of PSA against time,
10 using at least 5 PSA values over at least one year, and preferably over 2 or
11 more years. A tool such as the Prostagram
12 (<http://www.mskcc.org/mskcc/html/10088.cfm>) should be used.
- 13 • Indications for considering radical treatment include any of a PSA velocity >1
14 ng/ml/year, higher-grade or more extensive disease on repeat biopsy, or
15 evidence of locally advanced disease on digital rectal examination (DRE).
- 16 • The decision to proceed to radical treatment should be made in the light of the
17 individual man's values, comorbidities and life expectancy (see Chapter 2).

18 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are made on the basis of GDG
19 consensus supported by cohort and observational studies.

20 Clinical Evidence

21 A systematic review (Martin *et al.* 2006) compared protocols for the active
22 surveillance of men with untreated clinically localised prostate cancer. Five relevant
23 case series with predefined measures of disease progression were included, with
24 451 men in total. Although three of the series were prospective, only one had median
25 follow-up of more than five years.

26
27 The only consensus appeared to be the use of PSA tests and DRE in active
28 surveillance, initially at a frequency of every 3 months and every 6 months thereafter.
29 Some of the protocols involved routine transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) guided prostate
30 biopsies. The review did not contain any evidence about the use of Magnetic
31 Resonance Imaging (MRI) or Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy (MRS) in active
32 surveillance. There was no evidence about whether changing the frequency of these
33 tests influences outcomes.

34 Health Economic Evaluation

35
36
37 The literature search on active surveillance protocols identified 294 potentially
38 relevant papers, but none were obtained for appraisal as they did not include any
39 economic evaluations. No economic modelling was attempted because there was
40 considered to be insufficient clinical information on which to base a model.

41 Clinical Evidence

42 A systematic review (Martin *et al.* 2006) compared definitions of disease progression
43 and the rate at which men abandoned active surveillance. Individual studies defined
44 disease progression using a combination of biochemical, histological and clinical
45 criteria. Studies differed in their criteria for biochemical and histological progression.

1 There was no evidence about the effect of definition of disease progression on
2 outcomes.

3
4 The short follow-up and small sample sizes in these series meant relatively few
5 disease progression events, and attempts to identify predictive factors for
6 progression were unreliable. A rapidly rising PSA was generally accepted as an
7 indication for treatment, but there was no consensus on the definition of biochemical
8 progression that should trigger radical treatment. High grade disease on prostate re-
9 biopsy, increase in clinical tumour stage and the emergence of urinary symptoms
10 were indications for intervention in some of the series.

11 **Health Economic Evaluation**

12
13
14 The literature search on the indications for stopping active surveillance identified 53
15 potentially relevant papers, but none were obtained for appraisal as they did not
16 include any economic evaluations. No economic modelling was attempted because
17 there was considered to be insufficient clinical information on which to base a model.

18 **Radical prostatectomy**

19 Radical prostatectomy involves removal of the entire prostate gland and seminal
20 vesicles. Surgery has been traditionally performed by an open retropubic or perineal
21 approach. The risks associated with surgery include incontinence, erectile
22 dysfunction (see section 4.5) and the chance of involved surgical margins. Recently,
23 laparoscopic or robotically assisted techniques have shortened inpatient stays and
24 reduced blood loss. It is possible that improved continence and potency rates will
25 also be seen. Radical prostatectomy is a major operation, and is typically only offered
26 to men under 70 years of age.

27 **External beam radiotherapy**

28 External beam radiotherapy is the commonest treatment in the UK for men
29 diagnosed with localised prostate cancer. It is usually preceded by a period of
30 hormonal therapy, and is given in daily fractions over 4-8 weeks as an outpatient.
31 The side effects of this treatment can include alteration in urinary and bowel function
32 and erectile dysfunction (see section 4.5). There is currently a variety of dose-
33 fractionation regimens in use in England and Wales.

34 **Brachytherapy**

35 Brachytherapy is a form of radiotherapy in which the radiation is given using
36 radioactive sources implanted directly into the prostate. Possible side effects include
37 alteration in urinary and bowel function and erectile dysfunction (see section 4.5).
38 Brachytherapy may not be possible in men with an enlarged prostate. Significant
39 obstructive lower urinary tract symptoms are a relative contra-indication.

40 There is no good quality research comparing any of the above treatments. However,
41 the results of ongoing studies, such as ProtecT
42 (<http://www.hta.nhsweb.nhs.uk/project/1230.asp>), may provide some evidence in the
43 future. High intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) and cryotherapy have become
44 further options requiring evaluation.

1 HIFU and Cryotherapy

2 HIFU is a therapy which aims to eradicate prostate cancer by heating the gland using
3 ultrasound. Cryotherapy is another treatment which aims to eradicate prostate cancer
4 by freezing the gland.

5 Long term data on disease control are available for radical prostatectomy, external
6 beam radiotherapy and brachytherapy. There is little good quality information
7 available on disease control and toxicity of HIFU and cryotherapy.

8 Recommendations

- 9 • Radical prostatectomy or radical radiotherapy (conformal or brachytherapy)
10 should be considered for men with intermediate-risk localised prostate cancer.
- 11 • Radical prostatectomy or radical radiotherapy (conformal) is recommended for
12 men with high-risk localised prostate cancer.

13
14 **Qualifying statement:** There is no strong evidence for the benefit of one treatment
15 over another. Relatively little health gain is required for these interventions to become
16 demonstrably cost-effective.

17 Recommendation

- 18 • For men receiving radical external beam radiotherapy for localised prostate
19 cancer, 3D conformal radiotherapy should be used.

20 **Qualifying Statement:** There is evidence from randomised controlled trials that
21 conformal radiotherapy reduces toxicity compared with conventional radiotherapy at
22 similar dose.

23 Recommendation

- 24 • Men undergoing radical external beam radiotherapy for prostate cancer should
25 receive a minimum dose of 74Gy to the prostate at no more than 2Gy per
26 fraction.

27 **Qualifying Statement:** There is evidence from randomised controlled trials to
28 support making this recommendation.

29 Recommendation

- 30 • Given the range of treatment modalities and their serious side effects, men
31 with prostate cancer who are candidates for radical therapies should have the
32 opportunity to discuss their treatment options with both a specialist surgical
33 oncologist and a specialist clinical oncologist.

34 **Qualifying statement:** In the absence of any evidence there was GDG consensus
35 that men's decisions should be informed by site specialist clinicians.

36

37

1 Recommendation

- 2 • Other radical therapies such as cryotherapy and HIFU are not recommended
3 for men with localised or locally advanced prostate cancer other than in the
4 context of controlled clinical trials.

5 **Qualifying statement:** There is insufficient evidence of the balance between clinical
6 benefit and harm for these treatments.

7 Clinical Evidence

8 *Radical prostatectomy*

9 Evidence comes from a randomised trial comparing radical prostatectomy and
10 watchful waiting (Bill-Axelsson *et al.* 2005; Steineck *et al.* 2002), in men with localised,
11 well to moderately-well differentiated prostate cancer. Overall mortality, within 10
12 years of follow-up, was lower in men treated with prostatectomy than in those
13 managed with watchful waiting: 27.0% versus 32.0% respectively (Bill-Axelsson *et al.*
14 2005). Similarly, the rate of death from prostate cancer within 10 years of follow-up
15 was lower in the prostatectomy group than in the watchful waiting group (9.6% vs.
16 14.9% respectively). Erectile dysfunction and urinary incontinence, however, were
17 significantly more likely in the prostatectomy group (Steineck *et al.* 2002).

18
19 Two small randomised trials compared prostatectomy with radiotherapy in men with
20 locally advanced prostate cancer (Akakura *et al.* 2006) and in those with clinically
21 localised prostate cancer (Paulson *et al.* 1982). The applicability of the trials is limited
22 due to methodological problems (Paulson *et al.* 1982; Akakura *et al.* 2006) and use
23 of adjuvant and neoadjuvant hormonal therapy in all patients (Akakura *et al.* 2006).

24
25 *Radical radiotherapy*
26 No randomised trials comparing external beam radiotherapy with watchful waiting
27 were found. Evidence about outcomes after external beam radiotherapy comes from
28 observational studies, or from randomised trials comparing radiotherapy techniques.
29 A systematic review (Nilsson *et al.* 2004) included 26 retrospective observational
30 studies (17,018 patients) reported outcomes after conventional external beam
31 radiotherapy.

32
33 *Brachytherapy*
34 There were no randomised trials comparing brachytherapy with other radical
35 therapies or with watchful waiting. Systematic reviews of observational studies
36 (Hummel *et al.* 2003; Doust *et al.* 2004; Norderhaug *et al.* 2003; Nilsson *et al.* 2004)
37 found insufficient evidence to compare overall and disease specific survival after
38 brachytherapy with that after other radical therapies. Evidence from these systematic
39 reviews suggests that, at least for low-risk patients, biochemical-recurrence free
40 survival after brachytherapy is equivalent to that after external beam radiotherapy or
41 prostatectomy. Evidence from systematic reviews comparing the toxicity of radical
42 therapies for prostate cancer (Hummel *et al.* 2003; Doust *et al.* 2004; Nilsson *et al.*
43 2004) suggest brachytherapy has a similar adverse event rate to prostatectomy or
44 external beam radiotherapy, but such comparisons are based on evidence from
45 observational studies.

46
47 *Conformal vs. conventional radiotherapy*

1 Three randomised trials were identified (Dearnaley *et al.* 1999; Koper *et al.* 2004;
2 Pollack *et al.* 2002). Two were direct comparisons of conformal and conventional
3 radiotherapy (Dearnaley *et al.* 1999; Koper *et al.* 2004) and the other examined
4 conventional radiotherapy with or without an 8Gy conformal boost (Pollack *et al.*
5 2002). The evidence suggested reduced gastrointestinal and urinary toxicity with
6 conformal radiotherapy. Follow-up was insufficient to compare overall survival. There
7 was no evidence of a difference in biochemical failure rate in the trials that directly
8 compared conformal with conventional radiotherapy (Dearnaley *et al.* 1999; Koper *et*
9 *al.* 2004).

10 11 *Radiotherapy dose*

12 Randomised trials have examined dose escalation in conformal radiotherapy for
13 prostate cancer (Peeters *et al.* 2006; Dearnaley *et al.* 2007; Dearnaley *et al.* 2005;
14 Pollack *et al.* 2002), although Pollack *et al.* only used a conformal radiotherapy boost.
15 There was consistent evidence of improved biochemical progression-free survival in
16 the higher dose groups, at the cost of increased late bowel toxicity. Longer follow-up
17 is needed before overall or disease specific survival can be compared.

18
19 Two randomised controlled trials (Lukka *et al.* 2005; Yeoh *et al.* 2003) have
20 compared hypofractionated (fractions of 2.6Gy or more) with conventionally
21 fractionated (2Gy fractions) radiotherapy in this population, but at doses lower than
22 currently used. One trial (Lukka *et al.* 2005) reported overall survival, and found no
23 significant difference between groups at a median follow-up of 5.7 years. There was
24 no evidence about the effect of hypofractionation on disease specific survival, but the
25 evidence suggests an increased risk of biochemical failure and acute treatment
26 toxicity with hypofractionated radiotherapy.

27 28 *Cryotherapy*

29 Evidence comes from two systematic reviews of case series (Hummel *et al.* 2003;
30 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence 2005). Both reviews concluded
31 that evidence was of poor quality: the length of follow-up was very limited so there
32 was no good evidence about disease specific or overall survival. The intermediate
33 end-points of biochemical recurrence and prostate biopsy, however, show that
34 cryotherapy ablates prostate tissue. Treatment toxicity was also reported: most
35 commonly sexual dysfunction and stress incontinence.

36 37 *HIFU*

38 All the included studies were case series (Beerlage *et al.* 1999; Chaussy & Thuroff
39 2003; Gelet *et al.* 1999; Gelet *et al.* 2000; Poissonnier *et al.* 2003; Thuroff *et al.* 2003;
40 Uchida *et al.* 2002; Uchida *et al.* 2005). Follow-up in these series was short and only
41 one of the studies had a median follow-up of more than two years. This means that
42 disease specific or overall survival data are lacking for HIFU. The intermediate
43 outcomes of biochemical recurrence and prostate biopsy suggest that HIFU ablates
44 prostate tissue. Treatment toxicities associated with HIFU included sexual
45 dysfunction, stress incontinence, urethral strictures and urinary tract infection.

46
47 Technical developments in both cryotherapy and HIFU procedures, mean that results
48 from the earlier series may not be applicable to current practice.

1 Health Economic Evaluation (see also Appendix 3)

2
3 The literature search identified 1,532 papers that potentially estimated the cost-effectiveness of brachytherapy, cryotherapy, HIFU, radical prostatectomy, external beam radiotherapy, intensity modulated radiotherapy, watchful waiting and active surveillance for men with localised prostate cancer. 136 papers were obtained for appraisal and 4 full economic evaluations were subsequently identified and reviewed (Horwitz et al. 1999; Hummel et al. 2003; Calvert et al. 2003 and Konski et al. 2006).

9
10 The first of these studies (Horwitz et al. 1999) compared 3D conformal radiotherapy with conventional techniques, in a US setting, but was only available as an abstract and thus was not reviewed any further. The most recent study, by Konski et al. 2006 compared 3D conformal radiotherapy with intensity modulated radiotherapy (IMRT). The main limitation with this study was that differences in treatment effect were estimated using non-randomised studies, and few details of the literature search used to identify the non-randomised studies were provided. The remaining two studies were both performed in the UK (Hummel et al. 2003; Calvert et al. 2003). Hummel et al. (2003) assessed the costs and effects of a number of different treatment options, including active surveillance and radical prostatectomy, from a National Health Service (NHS) perspective. Health outcomes were expressed in terms of quality-adjusted life-years (QALYs) and a Markov model was used to assess the stream of costs and QALYs over a patient's lifetime. However, a core assumption within the analysis was that the treatment options did not differ in terms of altering the progression of the underlying prostate cancer, as little clinical evidence was available to prove otherwise. More specifically, no suitable randomised control trials (RCTs) were available with which to estimate the relative treatment effects. Thus, differences in treatment effect were only estimated in terms of expected side-effect profiles, although again, it should be noted that none of this evidence was derived from randomised trials.

30
31 While the baseline estimates suggested brachytherapy was cost-effective compared to active surveillance and radical prostatectomy, the authors concluded that this finding was not robust given the significant uncertainty surrounding the relative side effect profiles for the various treatment options. Moreover, different assumptions regarding the effect of treatment on the underlying prostate cancer also led to potentially different policy conclusions.

37
38 The economic evaluation by Calvert et al. (2003) compared policies of watchful waiting with radical prostatectomy in 60-year-old men with Gleason scores of 5-7^{§§§}. Costs were considered from a NHS perspective and the analysis was based on a Markov model. Health outcomes were expressed in terms of life-years gained and QALYs, the latter by adjusting expected survival for changes in health-related quality-of-life in terms of the underlying prostate cancer and adverse effects of treatment such as incontinence and impotence.

45
46 The baseline results of the analysis suggested that watchful waiting was less costly and more effective than radical prostatectomy (that is, it produced more QALYs). However, it should be noted that the number of QALYs gained per patient was almost equivalent for the two management options suggesting that gains in survival

^{§§§} Calvert et al. (2003) did include a third treatment option, a selection-based management option using DNA-ploidy as a marker of disease progression. However, as this option was considered to be experimental, it is not expanded upon in this paper.

1 attributable to radical prostatectomy were more than offset by increases in the
2 incidence of post-operative complications. Moreover, none of the effectiveness
3 evidence incorporated into the model was based on the results from RCTs, thus, it is
4 difficult to have complete confidence in the robustness of the results.

5
6 In terms of developing the understanding of the cost-effectiveness of the treatment
7 options for men with localised prostate cancer, there are arguably two main
8 limitations with the existing literature. Firstly, only the evaluation by Hummel et al.
9 (2003) attempted to assess the cost-effectiveness of more than two treatment
10 options, when a number of other options exist. Secondly, none of the studies
11 incorporates information from a more recently published RCT that compared radical
12 prostatectomy versus watchful waiting (Bill-Axelson et al. 2005). Thus a new
13 economic model was developed for this guideline that attempted to address these
14 two issues.

15 16 *De Novo Economic Evaluation*

17 The primary aim of this economic evaluation was to assess the cost-effectiveness of
18 watchful waiting versus radical prostatectomy using published results from the single
19 RCT. A secondary objective in the absence of RCT evidence, was to estimate how
20 effective other therapies (brachytherapy, standard external beam radiotherapy,
21 intensity modulated radiotherapy, HIFU and cryotherapy) would need to be in order
22 to be considered cost-effective, by conducting a threshold analysis on the number of
23 additional QALYs that were required to achieve certain willingness-to-pay thresholds
24 for a given value of one additional QALY.

25
26 The economic evaluation was based on a Markov model, and performed from a NHS
27 cost perspective. Health outcomes were expressed in terms of quality-adjusted life-
28 years (QALYs) and the model was run over 20 1-year periods. Over the period,
29 hypothetical patients could remain with localised disease, be free from prostate
30 cancer, develop metastatic disease or die (from prostate cancer or other age-
31 adjusted causes). The costs of treatment and the probability of adverse effects
32 following treatment (and their associated impact on health-related quality-of-life
33 [HRQoL] and cost) were amongst the variables included in the analysis. Information
34 on the relative effectiveness of radical prostatectomy compared with watchful waiting
35 was derived from Bill-Axelson et al. (2005). Cost and utility data were mostly derived
36 from the published literature. The possibility and outcomes of adverse events were
37 also included in the model.

38 39 *Results:*

40 When the side-effects associated with the treatment strategies were excluded,
41 radical prostatectomy was associated with incremental cost-effectiveness ratios
42 (ICERs) of less than £10,000, both in terms of life-years gained and QALYs (Table
43 1). However, when the possibility and consequences of post-operative complications
44 were included in the analysis, watchful waiting was shown to be the less costly and
45 more effective option. That is, increases in life expectancy and increases in HRQoL
46 associated with a slower progression of the underlying prostate cancer were more
47 than offset by reductions in HRQoL as a result of surgery-related side effects.
48 However, deterministic sensitivity analysis suggested that this result was extremely
49 sensitive to different assumptions regarding the probability of experiencing surgery-
50 related side effects, their duration and their associated disutilities. Thus, it is difficult
51 to attach much confidence to the results as small changes to the underlying

1 parameters and assumptions arguably lead to different decisions regarding the most
2 economically preferable management option.

4 **Table 1: Baseline incremental cost-effectiveness ratios**

	Cost	LY	QALYs ¹	QALYs ²
WW	£6185	9.69	6.96	6.63
RP	£10619	10.19	7.52	6.36
ICER		£8868	£7918	Dominated

5 RP, radical prostatectomy; WW, watchful waiting; ICER, incremental cost-effectiveness ratio

6
7 In QALYs¹, there is 0 probability of complications following treatment whereas in QALYs², the
8 additional probabilities of urinary obstruction, urinary leakage and impotence are assumed.

9 The figure in bold represents the main baseline result. In this instance, RP is more costly and less
10 effective than WW, thus it is 'dominated'.

11
12 Threshold analysis was conducted in order to see how effective, in terms of extra
13 QALYs, other therapies (brachytherapy, standard external beam radiotherapy,
14 intensity modulated radiotherapy, HIFU and cryotherapy) would need to be in order
15 for them to be cost-effective (compared to watchful waiting). The analysis showed
16 that the remaining treatment options would need to produce between 0.08 and 0.36
17 additional QALYs compared to watchful waiting in order for them to be considered
18 cost-effective at the £30,000 per additional QALY level (Table 2).

20 **Table 2: Results from the threshold analysis over a 20 year period compared to watchful
21 waiting using a willingness-to-pay for an extra QALY of £30,000.**

Treatment	Expected Cost of Treatment	Required QALY Increase ^a	Equivalent Health Gain In Months ^b
External beam radiotherapy	£8618	0.08	1
Brachytherapy	£11320	0.17	2
Cryotherapy	£12958	0.23	2.8
IMRT	£15016	0.29	3.5
HIFU	£17816	0.36	4.3

22 IMRT – intensity modulated radiotherapy; HIFU – high intensity focussed ultrasound

24 ^aRequired to achieve a cost per QALY gained of £30,000 compared with watchful waiting.

25 ^bFor example, external beam radiotherapy would have to produce 1 extra month of perfect health over
26 a 20 year period compared to watchful waiting for it to be considered cost-effective, which is itself
27 equivalent to 0.08 QALYs.

29 *Summary*

30 The results from this analysis suggest that the cost-effectiveness of radical
31 prostatectomy is highly dependent on the choice of health outcomes included in the
32 analysis. If only patient survival is considered, then radical prostatectomy is arguably
33 cost-effective. However, when quality-of-life considerations with respect to both the
34 underlying prostate cancer and treatment-related side effects are included, watchful
35 waiting becomes a more desirable option both in terms of expected costs and quality-
36 adjusted survival. This said, the sensitivity analysis showed that small changes to the
37 underlying assumptions (specifically) regarding the probability and duration of
38 treatment-related adverse effects, dramatically altered the incremental cost-
39 effectiveness ratio. Thus, the results from the analysis were not considered to be

1 robust. It is anticipated that evidence from the ongoing MAPS trial
2 (<https://www.chartrials.abdn.ac.uk/maps/faq.php>) and ProtecT trial
3 (<http://www.hta.nhsweb.nhs.uk/project/1230.asp>) will contribute significantly to any
4 up date of this model, as both are collecting adverse event data associated with
5 treatment options for men with localised prostate cancer, including radical
6 prostatectomy.

7
8 In the absence of RCT data, threshold analysis was undertaken to assess how
9 effective other treatments (brachytherapy, standard external beam radiotherapy,
10 intensity modulated radiotherapy, HIFU and cryotherapy) would need to be in order
11 to be considered cost-effective. The analysis showed that relatively modest increases
12 in QALYs were needed to be cost-effectiveness at a £30,000 per additional QALY
13 level, thus while there is no direct evidence to support the cost-effectiveness of these
14 treatments, the scope for them to be cost-effective is arguably large. It is also
15 conceivable that if they are associated with fewer adverse events compared to
16 watchful waiting/radical prostatectomy, yet do not confer better outcomes in terms of
17 progression of the underlying prostate cancer, there is still potential for them to be
18 cost-effective.

19 **4.5 Adverse Effects of Treatment**

20 Treatment of men with localised prostate cancer may be associated with a wide
21 range of significant adverse effects. Adverse effects are commonly classified
22 according to their timing. Acute effects are those which typically occur within days or
23 weeks of treatment. Late effects occur months or even years after treatment. It is not
24 possible to provide comprehensive guidance on the management of all possible
25 complications of treatment. Instead, this guideline focuses on those adverse effects
26 which are important because they are common, long-lasting and may seriously affect
27 quality of life: rectal problems after radiotherapy, sexual dysfunction and urinary
28 incontinence.

29 **4.5.1 Rectal Problems after Radiotherapy**

30 Radiotherapy for prostate cancer may lead to a range of adverse effects on the
31 bowel. Men receiving radiotherapy to pelvic lymph nodes may experience problems
32 from irradiation of the small bowel. More commonly, radiotherapy is targeted at the
33 prostate alone (and not the lymph nodes) and it is the rectum that is at risk of
34 radiation effects.

35 Acute and late stage toxicity in the bowel is an important complication of radiotherapy
36 for prostate cancer.

37 Radiation-induced injury to the bowel may be functional without underlying
38 anatomical disturbance, and symptoms and signs may well be due to treatable
39 causes or intercurrent pathology. There is an increased risk of rectal cancer after
40 pelvic radiation but faecal occult blood testing is a poor discriminator due to
41 telangiectasis.

42 There is a relative lack of research and specialisation by oncologists and
43 gastroenterologists in radiation-induced gastrointestinal (GI) tract injury. In
44 consequence, there is no structured way for patients with GI toxicity to be assessed
45 and potential protective treatments have not been tested adequately in man.

1 Recommendations

- 2 • Men presenting with symptoms consistent with radiation-induced enteropathy
3 should be fully investigated, including flexible sigmoidoscopy, in order to
4 exclude inflammatory bowel disease or malignancy of the large bowel and to
5 ascertain the nature of the radiation injury. Particular caution should be taken
6 with anterior wall rectal biopsy following brachytherapy because of the risk of
7 fistulation.
- 8 • Men treated with radical radiotherapy for prostate cancer should be offered
9 follow-up with flexible sigmoidoscopy every 5 years.
- 10 • Steroid enemas should not be used for treating men with radiation
11 proctopathy.
- 12 • The nature and treatment of radiation-induced injury to the GI tract should be
13 included in the training programmes for oncologists and gastroenterologists.

14 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are based on expert opinion and
15 GDG consensus.

16 Clinical Evidence

17 Many of the trials were not restricted to prostate cancer but included any patients
18 with any malignancy requiring pelvic EBRT. There was inconsistent evidence for the
19 use of aminosalicylates, sucralfate and misoprostol for the prevention of acute bowel
20 toxicity during pelvic radiotherapy. Other trials reported effective interventions for
21 treatment of acute bowel toxicity but each intervention was only tested in a single
22 trial.

23
24 There was no evidence, from fifteen randomised trials in patients receiving pelvic
25 radiotherapy, to support the use of radioprotective agents (see evidence review).
26 Other randomised trials demonstrated clinical effectiveness of loperamide (Sherman
27 et al. 1989), octreotide (Yavuz et al. 2002) and butyrate (Vernia et al. 2000) for acute
28 radiation-induced diarrhoea.

29
30 A systematic review of non-surgical interventions for late radiation proctopathy
31 (Denton et al. 2002) identified six randomised trials. Although some of studies
32 reported positive results, the trials were small and each examined a different
33 intervention. There was insufficient evidence, therefore, to recommend any specific
34 intervention.

35 A systematic review (McGough et al. 2004) concluded there was little evidence to
36 support the use of nutritional interventions for acute or chronic gastrointestinal
37 symptoms.

38 Due to the lack of good evidence for this question the GDG commissioned an expert
39 position paper (see Appendix B of the evidence review).

40 Health Economic Evaluation

41 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
42 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
43 reviewed.

1 4.5.2 Sexual Dysfunction

2 Sexual dysfunction is a very common side effect of all treatments for localised
3 prostate cancer. Sexual dysfunction is a general term which includes loss of libido,
4 erectile dysfunction, infertility and psychosexual issues.

5 The risk of loss of sexual function has an important influence on the decisions which
6 men and their partners make about treatment for prostate cancer. Although there is
7 evidence that, following an initial loss of erectile function, spontaneous improvements
8 will occur in a proportion of men without specific intervention, most men who undergo
9 radical treatment for prostate cancer experience erectile dysfunction and this is a
10 cause of distress for the majority (see Chapter 2).

11 Recommendation

- 12 • Prior to treatment, men and their partners should be warned that treatment for
13 prostate cancer will result in an alteration of sexual experience, and may result
14 in loss of sexual function.

15 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from case series and GDG consensus to
16 support this recommendation.

17 Recommendation

- 18 • Men and their partners should be warned about the potential loss of
19 ejaculation and fertility associated with treatment for prostate cancer. Sperm
20 storage should be offered if fertility is important to the man and/or his partner.

21 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from case series and strong GDG
22 consensus to support making this recommendation.

23 Recommendation

- 24 • Men and their partners should have early and ongoing access to specialist
25 erectile dysfunction services.

26 **Qualifying statement:** There was GDG consensus to support making this
27 recommendation.

28 Recommendation

- 29 • Men with prostate cancer who experience loss of erectile function should be
30 offered PDE5 (phosphodiesterase type 5) inhibitors to improve the chance of
31 spontaneous erections.

32 **Qualifying statement:** Evidence from randomised trials has shown a clinical benefit
33 for intervention with PDE5 inhibitors.

34

35

1 Recommendation

- 2 • If PDE5 inhibitors fail to restore erectile function or are contraindicated,
3 vacuum devices, intraurethral inserts or penile injections, or penile prostheses
4 should be considered as an alternative.

5 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on evidence from
6 observational studies.

7 Clinical Evidence

8 There is good evidence, from placebo controlled randomised trials, that sildenafil
9 improves erectile function in men with erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy
10 (Carson et al. 2002) and external beam radiotherapy (Incrocci et al. 2001). In placebo
11 controlled trials, tadalafil (Montorsi et al. 2004) and vardenafil (Brock et al. 2003)
12 improved erectile function in patients with erectile dysfunction after nerve sparing
13 radical prostatectomy. The literature search did not find any trials directly comparing
14 different PDE5 inhibitors in men with prostate cancer.

15
16 In a cohort study (Stephenson et al. 2005) and a large case series (Schover et al.
17 2002) of men after therapy for localised prostate cancer about half had tried
18 treatment for erectile dysfunction. Sildenafil was the most widely used treatment.
19 Invasive treatments (penile prostheses, penile injection) tended to be more effective
20 but were less widely used; psychosexual counseling was the least effective.

21
22 A meta-analysis of placebo controlled trials in patients with erectile dysfunction of
23 mixed aetiology concluded prostaglandin E1 was beneficial (Urciuoli et al. 2004).
24 Three RCTs examined psychosexual counseling in men with prostate cancer
25 (Canada et al. 2005; Giesler et al. 2005; Lepore et al. 2003), but none showed an
26 improvement in sexual function.

27 Health Economic Evaluation

28 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
29 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
30 reviewed.

31 4.5.3 Urinary Incontinence

32 Urinary incontinence of all types has been reported after prostate cancer treatment.
33 Radical prostatectomy can especially lead to stress incontinence, which may be
34 temporary or permanent. Incontinence may be a problem after brachytherapy and
35 external beam radiotherapy, in those men who have also had a trans-urethral
36 resection of the prostate. The severity of the symptoms is very variable as is the
37 degree to which this bothers individual men. Treatments for incontinence include
38 physical (pelvic floor muscle training, bladder retraining), medical (drug therapy) or
39 surgical (injection of bulking agents, artificial urinary sphincters or perineal sling).
40 Slings are currently under evaluation.

41

42

1 Recommendations

- 2 • Men experiencing bothersome urinary symptoms before treatment should
- 3 undergo urological assessment.
- 4 • Men undergoing treatment for prostate cancer should be warned of the likely
- 5 effects of the treatment on their urinary function.

6 **Qualifying statement:** There was case series evidence supported by GDG
7 consensus that these recommendations should be made.

8 Recommendation

- 9 • Men with bothersome urinary symptoms should have access to specialist
- 10 continence services for assessment, diagnosis and conservative treatment.
- 11 This may include learning coping strategies, along with pelvic floor muscle re-
- 12 education, bladder retraining and pharmacotherapy. Men with intractable
- 13 stress incontinence should be referred to a specialist surgeon for
- 14 consideration of an artificial urinary sphincter.

15 **Qualifying statement:** There was strong GDG consensus and evidence from
16 randomised trials to support making this recommendation.

17 Recommendation

- 18 • The injection of bulking agents into the distal urinary sphincter is not
- 19 recommended to treat stress incontinence.

20 **Qualifying statement:** The evidence from one small randomised trial did not support
21 the use of this intervention.

22 Clinical Evidence

23 *Pelvic floor re-education*

24 Systematic reviews of RCTs of pelvic floor muscle exercise (PME) training in men
25 (Dorey 2005 ;Hunter et al. 2004) suggest that PME training using biofeedback is
26 associated with earlier return to continence after radical prostatectomy. Continence
27 rates at 1 year post prostatectomy, however, were similar in PME and non-PME
28 groups. Two good quality RCTs published since the reviews (Burgio et al. 2006;
29 Filocamo et al. 2005) showed a benefit of early PMEs for post-prostatectomy
30 incontinence

31
32 The systematic reviews (Dorey 2005; Hunter et al. 2004) concluded that there was
33 insufficient evidence to support enhancements (such as biofeedback and electrical or
34 magnetic stimulation) to PMEs. A RCT conducted since these systematic reviews
35 (Yokoyama et al. 2004) showed earlier return to post radical prostatectomy
36 continence in men treated using external electrical or magnetic stimulation of the
37 pelvic floor muscles than in those treated with PMEs.

38

39 *Surgical treatment*

40 A single RCT (Imamoglu et al. 2005) compared injection of urethral bulking agent
41 with the AMS 800 artificial urinary sphincter in the treatment of post radical
42 prostatectomy urinary incontinence. In men with total incontinence after

1 prostatectomy, the artificial urinary sphincter was more effective in terms of number
2 of pads used and grams of urine lost. In men with minimal incontinence, however,
3 there was no significant difference between the two treatments.

5 **Health Economic Evaluation**

7 The literature search on interventions for urinary incontinence identified 184
8 potentially relevant papers. Nine of these papers were read in full but none were
9 appraised as they did not include any economic evaluations. No economic modeling
10 was attempted because there was considered to be insufficient clinical information on
11 which to base a model.

12 **4.6 Follow-up**

13 Routine follow-up after treatment of localised disease is used:

- 14 • to identify local recurrent disease at a stage when further radical treatment
- 15 might be effective
- 16 • to identify and treat the complications of therapy
- 17 • to give information and address concerns
- 18 • to audit the outcomes of treatment.

19 Methods of monitoring disease control and detecting disease recurrence include
20 physical examination, blood tests such as the PSA level, and imaging investigations.
21 It is rare for local clinical relapse to be detected before the PSA rises from baseline
22 values. The appropriate management of men with a rising PSA is an important area
23 of clinical controversy, and will be considered in some detail (see Chapter 5).

24 The traditional model for follow-up has been based around regular out patient visits
25 to hospital doctors. Alternative models include telephone follow-up, nurse-led clinics,
26 and follow-up in primary care. Although follow-up needs to be long term, this does
27 not necessarily need to be hospital-based.

28 **Recommendations**

- 29 • The purpose, duration, frequency and location of follow-up should be
- 30 discussed with each man, and where he wishes, his partner.
- 31 • Men should be clearly advised about potential longer term adverse effects and
- 32 when and how to report them.
- 33 • PSA levels should be checked at the earliest 6 weeks following treatment, at
- 34 least 6 monthly for the first 2 years and then at least yearly thereafter.
- 35 • Routine DRE is not recommended while the PSA remains at baseline levels.
- 36 • After 2 years at the earliest, men with a stable PSA and no significant
- 37 treatment complications, should be offered follow-up outside hospital, for
- 38 example in primary care, by telephone or e-mail, or a combination, unless they
- 39 are participating in a clinical trial which requires more formal clinic-based
- 40 follow-up. The opportunity of direct access to the specialist team should be
- 41 offered and explained.
- 42 • Men who have chosen a watchful waiting regimen with no curative intent
- 43 should normally be followed up in primary care.

1 **Qualifying statement:** In the absence of reliable evidence, these recommendations
2 are based on GDG consensus to make this recommendation.

3 **Clinical Evidence**

4 Literature searches did not identify any studies comparing different follow-up
5 frequencies.

6
7 Some authors have recommended strategies for follow-up (Carroll *et al.* 2001; Catton
8 *et al.* 2003; Edelman *et al.* 1997; Yao & DiPaola 2003) but none comes from a
9 systematic review of the evidence. Studies of the acceptability of follow-up strategies
10 in primary care have not reported rates of disease recurrence and survival (Rose *et*
11 *al.*1996 ; Cathala *et al.* 2003; Booker *et al.*).

12 **Health Economic Evaluation**

13 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
14 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
15 reviewed.

16 **Research Recommendations**

- 17 • Research into the causes, and clinical trials of prevention and management of
18 radiation-induced enteropathy should be undertaken.
- 19 • Further research should be conducted into the timing and effectiveness of
20 treatments for erectile dysfunction after all treatments for prostate cancer.
- 21 • Further research is required into the causes, prevention and treatment
22 strategies for urinary incontinence in men with prostate cancer.

23 **References**

24 Albertsen, P. C., Hanley, J. A. & Fine, J. (2005) 20-year outcomes following
25 conservative management of clinically localized prostate cancer. *JAMA*, 293: 2095-
26 2101.

27 Akakura, K., Suzuki, H., Ichikawa, T., Fujimoto, H., Maeda, O., Usami, M., Hirano, D.,
28 Takimoto, Y., Kamoto, T., Ogawa, O., Sumiyoshi, Y., Shimazaki, J. & Kakizoe, T.
29 (2006) A Randomized Trial Comparing Radical Prostatectomy Plus Endocrine
30 Therapy versus External Beam Radiotherapy Plus Endocrine Therapy for Locally
31 Advanced Prostate Cancer: Results at Median Follow-up of 102 Months. *Jpn.J Clin*
32 *Oncol*, 36: 789-793.

33 Beerlage, H. P., Thuroff, S., Debruyne, F. M., Chaussy, C. & de la Rosette, J. J.
34 (1999) Transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound using the Ablatherm device in
35 the treatment of localized prostate carcinoma. *Urology*, 54: 273-277.

36 Bill-Axelson, A., Holmberg, L., Ruutu, M., Haggman, M., Andersson, S. O., Bratell,
37 S., Spangberg, A., Busch, C., Nordling, S., Garmo, H., Palmgren, J., Adami, H. O.,
38 Norlen, B. J., Johansson, J. E., Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group & 4. (2005)
39 Radical prostatectomy versus watchful waiting in early prostate cancer.. *N Engl J*
40 *Med*, 352: 1977-1984.

41 Booker, J., Eardley, A., Cowan, R., Logue, J., Wylie, J. & Caress, A. (2004)
42 Telephone first post-intervention follow-up for men who have had radical

- 1 radiotherapy to the prostate: evaluation of a novel service delivery approach.
2 *European Journal of Oncology Nursing*; 8(4):325-333,...
- 3 Brock, G., Nehra, A., Lipshultz, L. I., Karlin, G. S., Gleave, M., Seger, M. & Padma-
4 Nathan, H. (2003) Safety and efficacy of vardenafil for the treatment of men with
5 erectile dysfunction after radical retropubic prostatectomy. *J Urol*, 170: 1278-1283.
- 6 Burgio, K. L., Goode, P. S., Urban, D. A., Umlauf, M. G., Locher, J. L., Bueschen, A.
7 & Redden, D. T. (2006) Preoperative biofeedback assisted behavioral training to
8 decrease post-prostatectomy incontinence: A randomized, controlled trial. *J Urol*,
9 175: 196-201.
- 10 Calvert, N.W., et al., (2003) Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of prognostic
11 markers in prostate cancer. *British Journal of Cancer* 88(1): 31-35.
- 12 Canada, A. L., Neese, L. E., Sui, D. & Schover, L. R. (2005) Pilot intervention to
13 enhance sexual rehabilitation for couples after treatment for localized prostate
14 carcinoma. *Cancer*, 104: 2689-2700.
- 15 Carroll, P., Coley, C., McLeod, D., Schellhammer, P., Sweat, G., Wasson, J.,
16 Zietman, A. & Thompson, I. (2001) Prostate-specific antigen best practice policy--part
17 II: prostate cancer staging and post-treatment follow-up. [Review] [38 refs]. *Urology*,
18 57: 225-229.
- 19 Carson, C. C., Burnett, A. L., Levine, L. A. & Nehra, A. (2002) The efficacy of
20 sildenafil citrate (Viagra((R))) in clinical populations: An update. *Urology*, 60: 12-27.
- 21 Cathala, N., Brillat, F., Mombet, A., Lobel, E., Prapotnich, D., Alexandre, L. &
22 Vallancien, G. (2003) Patient followup after radical prostatectomy by internet medical
23 file. *J Urol*, 170: 2284-2287.
- 24 Catton, C., Milosevic, M., Warde, P., Bayley, A., Crook, J., Bristow, R. &
25 Gospodarowicz, M. (2003) Recurrent prostate cancer following external beam
26 radiotherapy: Follow-up strategies and management. *Urol Clin North Am*, 30: 751-+.
- 27 Chaussy, C. & Thuroff, S. (2003) The status of high-intensity focused ultrasound in
28 the treatment of localized prostate cancer and the impact of a combined resection.
29 *Current Urology Reports*, 4: 248-252.
- 30 Dearnaley, D. P., Khoo, V. S., Norman, A. R., Meyer, L., Nahum, A., Tait, D.,
31 Yarnold, J. & Horwich, A. (1999) Comparison of radiation side-effects of conformal
32 and conventional radiotherapy in prostate cancer: a randomised trial. *Lancet*, 353:
33 267-272.
- 34 Dearnaley, D. P., Hall, E., Lawrence, D., Huddart, R. A., Eeles, R., Nutting, C. M.,
35 Gadd, J., Warrington, A., Bidmead, M. & Horwich, A. (2005) Phase III pilot study of
36 dose escalation using conformal radiotherapy in prostate cancer: PSA control and
37 side effects. *Br J Cancer*, 92: 488-498.
- 38 Dearnaley, D. P., Sydes, M. R., Graham, J. D., Aird, E. G., Bottomley, D., Cowan, R.
39 A., Huddart, R. A., Jose, C. C., Matthews, J. H., Millar, J., Moore, A. R., Morgan, R.
40 C., Russell, J. M., Scrase, C. D., Stephens, R. J., Syndikus, I. & Parmar, M. K. (2007)
41 Escalated-dose versus standard-dose conformal radiotherapy in prostate cancer: first
42 results from the MRC RT01 randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Oncology*, 8: 475-
43 487.
- 44 Denton, A., Forbes, A., Andreyev, J. & Maher, E. J. (2002). Non surgical
45 interventions for late radiation proctitis in patients who have received radical
46 radiotherapy to the pelvis [Cochrane review]. *Cochrane Database of Systematic
47 Reviews 2002 Issue 1* Chichester (UK): John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.

- 1 Dorey, G. (2005) Men's health. Restoring pelvic floor function in men: review of
2 RCTs. *Br J Nurs*. 14(19):1014-1018.
- 3 Doust, Miller, Duchesne, Kitchener and Weller (2004). A systematic review of
4 brachytherapy: is it an effective and safe treatment for localised prostate cancer.
5 *Australian Family Physician*, vol. 33, no. 7 pp. 525-529.
- 6 Edelman, M. J., Meyers, F. J. & Siegel, D. (1997) The utility of follow-up testing after
7 curative cancer therapy. A critical review and economic analysis. [Review] [133 refs].
8 *J Gen Intern.Med*, 12: 318-331.
- 9 Filocamo, M. T., Li, M., Del, P. G., Cecconi, F., Marzocco, M., Tosto, A. & Nicita, G.
10 (2005) Effectiveness of early pelvic floor rehabilitation treatment for post-
11 prostatectomy incontinence. *Eur Urol*, 48: 734-738.
- 12 Giesler, R. B., Given, B., Given, C. W., Rawl, S., Monahan, P., Burns, D., Azzouz, F.,
13 Reuille, K. M., Weinrich, S., Koch, M. & Champion, V. (2005) Improving the quality of
14 life of patients with prostate carcinoma: a randomized trial testing the efficacy of a
15 nurse-driven intervention. *Cancer*, 104: 752-762.
- 16 Gelet, A., Chapelon, J. Y., Bouvier, R., Pangaud, C. & Lasne, Y. (1999) Local control
17 of prostate cancer by transrectal high intensity focused ultrasound therapy:
18 Preliminary results. *J Urol*, 161: 156-162.
- 19 Gelet, A., Chapelon, J. Y., Bouvier, R., Rouviere, O., Lasne, Y., Lyonnet, D. &
20 Dubernard, J. M. (2000) Transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound: minimally
21 invasive therapy of localized prostate cancer.[erratum appears in J Endourol 2000
22 Oct;14(8):697]. *J Endourol.*, 14: 519-528.
- 23 Horwitz, E.M. Hanlon, AL (1999) The cost effectiveness of 3D conformal radiation
24 therapy compared with conventional techniques for patients with clinically localized
25 prostate cancer. *International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics* 45(5):
26 1219-1125.
- 27 Hummel, S., Paisley, S., Morgan, A., Currie, E. & Brewer, N. (2003) Clinical and cost-
28 effectiveness of new and emerging technologies for early localised prostate cancer: a
29 systematic review. [Review] [175 refs]. *Health Technology Assessment (Winchester,*
30 *England)*, 7: iii-157.
- 31 Hunter, K. F., Moore, K. N., Cody, D. J. & Glazener, C. M. A. (2004) Conservative
32 management for postprostatectomy urinary incontinence [Cochrane review]. 2004
33 ;(2): .
- 34 Incrocci, L., Koper, P. C., Hop, W. C. & Slob, A. K. (2001) Sildenafil citrate (Viagra)
35 and erectile dysfunction following external beam radiotherapy for prostate cancer: a
36 randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, cross-over study. *Int J Radiat.Oncol*
37 *Biol.Phys.*, 51: 1190-1195.
- 38 Imamoglu, M. A., Tuygun, C., Bakirtas, H., Yigitbasi, O. & Kiper, A. (2005) The
39 comparison of artificial urinary sphincter implantation and endourethral
40 macroplastique injection for the treatment of postprostatectomy incontinence. *Eur*
41 *Urol*, 47: 209-213.
- 42 Klotz, L 'A Phase III Study of Active Surveillance Therapy Against Radical Treatment
43 in Patients Diagnosed with Favourable Risk Prostate Cancer [START]'[online].
44 Available from: <http://www.cancer.gov/clinicaltrials/CAN-NCIC-CTG-PR11> [accessed
45 23 July 2007]
- 46 Konski A et al. (2006) Using decision analysis to determine the cost-effectiveness of
47 intensity-modulated radiation therapy in the treatment of intermediate risk prostate

- 1 cancer. *International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics* 66(2): 408-
2 415.
- 3 Koper, P. C., Jansen, P., van, P. W., van, O. M., Wijnmaalen, A. J., Lebesque, J. V.
4 & Levendag, P. C. (2004) Gastro-intestinal and genito-urinary morbidity after 3D
5 conformal radiotherapy of prostate cancer: observations of a randomized trial.
6 *Radiother.Oncol*, 73: 1-9.
- 7 Lepore, S. J., Helgeson, V. S., Eton, D. T. & Schulz, R. (2003) Improving quality of
8 life in men with prostate cancer: a randomized controlled trial of group education
9 interventions. *Health psychology : official journal of the Division of Health*
10 *Psychology, American Psychological Association*, 22: 443-452.
- 11 Lukka, H., Hayter, C., Julian, J. A., Warde, P., Morris, W. J., Gospodarowicz, M.,
12 Levine, M., Sathya, J., Choo, R., Prichard, H., Brundage, M. & Kwan, W. (2005)
13 Randomized trial comparing two fractionation schedules for patients with localized
14 prostate cancer. *J Clin Oncol*, 23: 6132-6138.
- 15 Martin, R. M., Gunnell, D., Hamdy, F., Neal, D., Lane, A. & Donovan, J. (2006)
16 Continuing controversy over monitoring men with localized prostate cancer: A
17 systematic review of programs in the prostate specific antigen era. *Journal of*
18 *Urology*, 176: 439-449.
- 19 McGough, C., Baldwin, C., Frost, G. & Andreyev, H. J. (2004) Role of nutritional
20 intervention in patients treated with radiotherapy for pelvic malignancy. *British*
21 *Journal of Cancer*, 90: 2278-2287.
- 22 Montorsi, F., Padma-Nathan, H., McCullough, A., Brock, G. B., Broderick, G., Ahuja,
23 S., Whitaker, S., Hoover, A., Novack, D., Murphy, A. & Varanese, L. (2004) Tadalafil
24 in the treatment of erectile dysfunction following bilateral nerve sparing radical
25 retropubic prostatectomy: A randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled trial. *J Urol*,
26 172: 1036-1041.
- 27 National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2002). *Guidance on cancer services -*
28 *improving outcomes in urological cancers. The manual*. London: National Institute for
29 Clinical Excellence.
- 30 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence Cryotherapy as a primary
31 treatment for prostate cancer. 2005 ;*Interventional Procedure.Guidance.145:*
32 *Interventional Procedure Guidance 145:* .
- 33 Nilsson, S., Norlen, B. J. & Widmark, A. (2004) A systematic overview of radiation
34 therapy effects in prostate cancer. [Review] [390 refs]. *Acta Oncol*, 43: 316-381.
- 35 Norderhaug, Dahl, Høisæter, Heikkilä, Klepp, Olsen, Kristiansen, Wæhre, Johansen.
36 (2003) Brachytherapy for prostate cancer: A systematic Review of Clinical and Cost
37 Effectiveness. *European Urology*, 44: 40-46
- 38 Paulson, D. F., Lin, G. H., Hinshaw, W. & Stephani, S. (1982) Radical surgery versus
39 radiotherapy for adenocarcinoma of the prostate. *J Urol*, 128: 502-504.
- 40 Peeters, S. T., Heemsbergen, W. D., Koper, P. C., van Putten, W. L., Slot, A.,
41 Dielwart, M. F., Bonfrer, J. M., Incrocci, L. & Lebesque, J. V. (2006) Dose-response
42 in radiotherapy for localized prostate cancer: results of the Dutch multicenter
43 randomized phase III trial comparing 68 Gy of radiotherapy with 78 Gy. *J Clin Oncol*,
44 24: 1990-1996.
- 45 Poissonnier, L., Gelet, A., Chapelon, J. Y., Bouvier, R., Rouviere, O., Pangaud, C.,
46 Lyonnet, D. & Dubernard, J. M. (2003) [Results of transrectal focused ultrasound for

- 1 the treatment of localized prostate cancer (120 patients with PSA < or + 10ng/ml].
2 *Prog.Urol*, 13: 60-72.
- 3 Pollack, A., Zagars, G. K., Starkschall, G., Antolak, J. A., Lee, J. J., Huang, E., Von
4 Eschenbach, A. C., Kuban, D. A. & Rosen, I. (2002) Prostate cancer radiation dose
5 response: Results of the M. D. Anderson phase III randomized trial. *International*
6 *Journal of Radiation Oncology Biology Physics*, 53: 1097-1105.
- 7 Rose, M. A., Shrader-Bogen, C. L., Korlath, G., Priem, J. & Larson, L. R. (1996)
8 Identifying patient symptoms after radiotherapy using a nurse-managed telephone
9 interview. *Oncol Nurs.Forum*; 23(1):99-102.
- 10 Schover, L. R., Fouladi, R. T., Warneke, C. L., Neese, L., Klein, E. A., Zippe, C. &
11 Kupelian, P. A. (2002) The use of treatments for erectile dysfunction among survivors
12 of prostate carcinoma. *Cancer*, 95: 2397-2407.
- 13 Sherman, D. M., Mangini, L., Poirier, P. & Kadish, S. P. (1989) Double-blind
14 comparison of loperamide and placebo in the treatment of radiation-induced diarrhea.
15 *Advances in Therapy*, 6: 103-111.
- 16 Steineck, G., Helgesen, F., Adolfsson, J., Dickman, P. W., Johansson, J. E., Norlen,
17 B. J., Holmberg, L. & Scandinavian Prostatic Cancer Group (2002) Quality of life after
18 radical prostatectomy or watchful waiting. *N Engl J Med*, 347: 790-796.
- 19 Stephenson, R. A., Mori, M., Hsieh, Y. C., Beer, T. M., Stanford, J. L., Gilliland, F. D.,
20 Hoffman, R. M. & Potosky, A. L. (2005) Treatment of erectile dysfunction following
21 therapy for clinically localized prostate cancer: patient reported use and outcomes
22 from the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results Prostate Cancer Outcomes
23 Study. *J Urol*, 174: 646-650.
- 24 Thuroff, S., Chaussy, C., Vallancien, G., Wieland, W., Kiel, H. J., Le, D. A.,
25 Desgrandchamps, F., de la Rosette, J. J. & Gelet, A. (2003) High-intensity focused
26 ultrasound and localized prostate cancer: efficacy results from the European
27 multicentric study. *J Endourol.*, 17: 673-677.
- 28 Uchida, T., Baba, S., Irie, A., Soh, S., Masumori, N., Tsukamoto, T., Nakatsu, H.,
29 Fujimoto, H., Kakizoe, T., Ueda, T., Ichikawa, T., Ohta, N., Kitamura, T., Sumitomo,
30 M., Hayakawa, M., Aoyagi, T., Tachibana, M., Ikeda, R., Suzuki, K., Tsuru, N.,
31 Suzuki, K., Ozono, S., Fujimoto, K., Hirao, Y., Monden, K., Nasu, Y., Kumon, H.,
32 Nishi, K., Ueda, S., Koga, H. & Naitoh, S. (2005) Transrectal high-intensity focused
33 ultrasound in the treatment of localized prostate cancer: a multicenter study.
34 *Hinyokika Kyo - Acta Urologica Japonica*, 51: 651-658.
- 35 Uchida, T., Sanghvi, N. T., Gardner, T. A., Koch, M. O., Ishii, D., Minei, S., Satoh, T.,
36 Hyodo, T., Irie, A. & Baba, S. (2002) Transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound for
37 treatment of patients with stage T1b-2n0m0 localized prostate cancer: a preliminary
38 report. *Urology*, 59: 394-398.
- 39 Vernia, P., Fracasso, P. L., Casale, V., Villotti, G., Marcheggiano, A., Stigliano, V.,
40 Pinnaro, P., Bagnardi, V. & Caprilli, R. (2000) Topical butyrate for acute radiation
41 proctitis: Randomised, crossover trial. *Lancet*, 356: 1232-1235.
- 42 Urciuoli, R., Cantisani, T. A., Carlinil, M., Giuglietti, M. & Botti, F. M. (2004)
43 Prostaglandin E1 for treatment of erectile dysfunction [Cochrane review]. (2).
- 44 Yao, S. L. & DiPaola, R. S. (2003) An evidence-based approach to prostate cancer
45 follow-up. [Review] [56 refs]. *Semin.Oncol*, 30: 390-400.
- 46 Yavuz, M. N., Yavuz, A. A., Aydin, F., Can, G. & Kavgaci, H. (2002) The efficacy of
47 octreotide in the therapy of acute radiation-induced diarrhea: A randomized

- 1 controlled study. *International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics*, 54:
2 195-202.
- 3 Yeoh, E. E. K., Fraser, R. J., McGowan, R. E., Botten, R. J., Di Matteo, A. C., Roos,
4 D. E., Penniment, M. G. & Borg, M. F. (2003) Evidence for efficacy without increased
5 toxicity of hypofractionated radiotherapy for prostate carcinoma: Early results of a
6 Phase III randomized trial. *Int J Radiat. Oncol Biol. Phys.*, 55: 943-955.
- 7 Yokoyama, T., Nishiguchi, J., Watanabe, T., Nose, H., Nozaki, K., Fujita, O., Inoue,
8 M. & Kumon, H. (2004) Comparative study of effects of extracorporeal magnetic
9 innervation versus electrical stimulation for urinary incontinence after radical
10 prostatectomy. *Urology*, 63: 264-267.

1 **5 THE MANAGEMENT OF RELAPSE AFTER RADICAL TREATMENT**

2 **5.1 Introduction**

3 Biochemical relapse after radical treatment for localised prostate cancer is now a
4 common clinical problem in prostate cancer clinics. The challenge is identifying those
5 men in whom biochemical relapse predicts a significant risk of prostate cancer
6 morbidity or mortality.

7 Prostate specific antigen (PSA)^{****} is a protein produced almost exclusively by
8 prostatic epithelial cells, either benign or malignant. Radical therapy is aimed at the
9 destruction of cancer cells and as a consequence also destroys benign prostatic
10 tissue.

11 **5.2 Defining Biochemical Relapse**

12 The definition of biochemical relapse differs depending upon the radical therapy.
13 Radical surgery aims to remove all prostatic tissue. The serum PSA should drop to
14 very low levels (typically <0.01ng/ml) and remain at that level. Radiation also results
15 in cell death and a fall in serum PSA. A rise in PSA during follow-up indicates the
16 probability of prostatic cancer cells present locally at the site of the prostate or at
17 distant sites. However, this frequently does not translate into clinical recurrence or
18 death from cancer.

19 The rate at which PSA increases following radical therapy is an important predictor of
20 subsequent prostate cancer related mortality. Other factors such as Gleason score
21 ≥ 8 and the timing of PSA rise after radical treatment are also useful measures of risk.
22 The interpretation of biochemical relapse may be complicated by the variety of PSA
23 assays available.

24 **Recommendation**

- 25 • Serial PSA levels after radical treatment should be analysed using the same
26 assay technique.

27 **Qualifying statement:** There was GDG consensus based on the known variability in
28 assays to make this recommendation.

29 **5.2.1 After Radical Prostatectomy**

30 The presence of any detectable PSA in peripheral blood is often interpreted as
31 indicating a clinically significant relapse, but this may be due to the presence of
32 benign prostate tissue in a small proportion of men. The existence of residual
33 disease, which may lead to clinical progression, can be recognised most reliably by a
34 PSA of >0.4ng/ml and rising.

35 **5.2.2 After Radical Radiotherapy**

36 The PSA does not usually fall to zero after radical treatment with external beam

**** For more information on PSA please see Appendix 1

1 radiotherapy. The definitions of biochemical relapse with the best combination of
 2 sensitivity and specificity for clinical or distant relapse after radical therapy are those
 3 that used a fixed value above a nadir. This allows for the slight rise in PSA that is
 4 seen when neoadjuvant or adjuvant hormonal therapy is discontinued. The 2005
 5 ASTRO consensus definition (PSA greater than current nadir + 2ng/ml: Roach,
 6 2006), had a sensitivity of 74% and specificity of 71% for any clinical failure.

7 **5.2.3 After Brachytherapy – Low Dose**

8 Typically the PSA level falls slowly after brachytherapy and does not normally reach
 9 zero. Indeed, the level may temporarily rise (the PSA bounce) after initial treatment.
 10 The most sensitive and specific predictors of persistent disease or relapse are, as
 11 with external beam radiotherapy; the nadir + 2ng/ml.

12 **Clinical Evidence**

13 Evidence from case series and clinical trials shows that that not all men with
 14 biochemical relapse after definitive prostate cancer therapy experience distant
 15 metastasis or death from prostate cancer (Vicini *et al.* 2005; Pound *et al.* 1999).
 16 Given this, studies have examined factors that signify clinically relevant biochemical
 17 recurrence. A PSA doubling time of less than 3 months was an adverse prognostic
 18 factor for cancer specific survival (Freedland *et al.* 2005; D'Amico *et al.* 2004) and
 19 overall survival (D'Amico *et al.* 2004) in a series of men with biochemical relapse.
 20 Gleason score was a prognostic factor for disease specific survival (Freedland *et al.*
 21 2005; Kwan *et al.* 2006).

22 *Definitions of biochemical relapse:*

23 *After prostatectomy*

24 Reviews report a variety of biochemical relapse definitions in the literature (Vicini
 25 2005; (Cookson *et al.* 2007)), most commonly PSA of 0.4 ng/ml or more and rising
 26 and PSA of 0.2 ng/ml or more and rising (Cookson *et al.* 2007). Stephenson *et al.*
 27 (2006) compared definitions of biochemical relapse in a large series of men following
 28 prostatectomy. The definition that best correlated with metastatic progression was
 29 PSA of 0.4 ng/ml or more and rising. A recent ASTRO consensus panel favoured a
 30 definition of 0.2 ng/ml or more and rising due to its greater sensitivity (Cookson *et al.*
 31 2007).
 32

33 *After external beam radiotherapy (EBRT)*

34 Meta-analysis of individual patient data was used to test 102 definitions of
 35 biochemical recurrence after external beam radiotherapy (Kuban *et al.* 2005; Horwitz
 36 *et al.* 2005). The definitions with the best sensitivity and specificity for clinical and
 37 distant failure were those using a fixed PSA rise (2 or 3ng/ml) above the current nadir
 38 value at call. The 2005 ASTRO consensus definition (PSA greater than current nadir
 39 + 2ng/ml at call: Roach, 2006), had a sensitivity of 74% and specificity of 71% for any
 40 clinical failure.
 41

42 *After brachytherapy*

43 Kuban *et al.* (2006) reported the most sensitive and specific practical definitions of
 44 biochemical recurrence after brachytherapy were the current nadir + 1ng/ml and the
 45 current nadir + 2ng/ml (ASTRO 2005). The sensitivity and specificity of the ASTRO
 46 2005 definition were comparable to those seen in the radiotherapy cohort (Kuban *et al.*
 47 2005; Horwitz *et al.* 2005). The ASTRO 2005 definition had a false call rate of 2%
 48

1 due to PSA bounce in a large series of men after external beam radiotherapy or
2 brachytherapy for prostate cancer (Pickles 2006).

3 **Health Economic Evaluation**

4 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
5 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
6 reviewed.

7 **5.3 Assessment of Biochemical Relapse**

8 If biochemical relapse is confirmed by a rising PSA as defined above, options for
9 investigation may include biopsy, local (pelvic) imaging and imaging for the presence
10 of metastatic disease.

11 **5.3.1 Biopsy**

12 Biopsy of the prostatic bed after radical prostatectomy can identify the existence of
13 local recurrence. However, a positive biopsy does not exclude metastatic disease
14 and a negative biopsy does not exclude local recurrence. Therefore the results of the
15 biopsy are not useful for making treatment decisions. After radiotherapy, including
16 brachytherapy, routine biopsy of the prostate does not add clinically useful
17 information to that obtained from serial PSA measurement.

18 **Recommendations**

- 19 • Biopsy of the prostatic bed should not be performed in men who have had a
20 radical prostatectomy.
- 21 • Biopsy of the prostate after radiotherapy should only be done in men being
22 considered for salvage local therapy in the context of clinical research.

23 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are based on evidence from small
24 case series.

25 **Clinical Evidence**

26 The literature search found no studies reporting the impact of staging after
27 biochemical recurrence on patient outcomes. Reported rates of positive biopsy in
28 case series of men with biochemical recurrence after prostatectomy ranged from 41
29 to 55% (Scattoni et al. 2004). Men with eventual positive biopsy often required more
30 than one biopsy session, suggesting a significant risk of false negative. An ASTRO
31 consensus panel (Cox et al. 1999) considered evidence from case series about
32 prostate biopsy after radiotherapy and concluded that routine biopsy of the prostate
33 after radiotherapy was not recommended since it did not add to data provided by
34 serial PSA measurements.

35 **Health Economic Evaluation**

36 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
37 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
38 reviewed.

1 **5.3.2 Imaging**

2 Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) scanning may have some value in those with
3 biochemical relapse being considered for further local therapy. It may detect
4 significant extracapsular disease, seminal vesicle involvement or lymphadenopathy
5 which might preclude radical salvage therapy.

6 The chance of finding skeletal metastases in men with biochemical relapse is best
7 predicted by the absolute PSA level and the rate of rise.

8 **Recommendations**

9 For men with evidence of biochemical relapse following radical treatment and who
10 are considering radical salvage therapy:

- 11 • Routine MRI scanning should not be performed prior to salvage radiotherapy.
- 12 • An isotope bone scan should be performed if symptoms or PSA trends are
13 suggestive of metastases.

14 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are based on case series evidence
15 and GDG consensus.

16 **Clinical Evidence**

17 The literature search found no studies reporting the impact of staging after
18 biochemical recurrence on patient outcomes. Small case series report good
19 sensitivity and specificity of MRI for the detection of local recurrence after
20 prostatectomy (Sella et al. 2004; Silverman & Krebs 1997), but not after radiotherapy
21 (Sala et al. 2006; Coakley 2004).

22
23 The rate of bone scans positive for malignancy in men with biochemical recurrence
24 after radical prostatectomy was 4 to 14% in four case series (Cher et al. 1998; Dotan
25 2005; Okotie et al. 2004; Kane 2003). The rate of suspicious or indeterminate (but
26 ultimately non-malignant) scans was almost as high at between 3 and 8%, raising
27 questions about the specificity of the bone scan. Trigger PSA, PSA slope, and PSA
28 velocity were all significant predictors of bone scan result. The risk of a positive bone
29 scan for men with PSA less than 10ng/ml was between 1 and 3% in two series (Cher
30 et al. 1998; Okotie et al. 2004), compared with 75% for PSA greater than 10ng/ml
31 (Okotie et al. 2004).

32
33 In one series salvage treatment decisions were sometimes changed on the basis of
34 ProstaScint imaging (Jani 2004), however there was inconsistent evidence that
35 ProstaScint results could predict the outcome of salvage therapy (Levesque et al.
36 1998; Proano 2006; Mohideen 2002; Thomas et al. 2003).

37 **Health Economic Evaluation**

38 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
39 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
40 reviewed.

41

1 **5.4 Management of Biochemical Relapse**

2 It is not known whether treating biochemical relapse, rather than waiting until there
3 are clinical signs of disease, will influence survival.

4 Biochemical relapse after radical therapy, in many cases, does not lead to
5 metastases or death from prostate cancer. Whether men with biochemical relapse
6 should be treated depends in part on the timing and rate of rise of PSA as a predictor
7 of clinical progression. Management options can be divided into local salvage
8 therapies and systemic therapies.

9 **Recommendations**

- 10 • Biochemical relapse alone should not necessarily prompt an immediate
11 change in treatment.
- 12 • Biochemical relapse should trigger an estimate of PSA doubling time, based
13 on a minimum of 3 measurements over at least a 6 month period.

14 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from longitudinal studies and clinical trials
15 to support making these recommendations.

16 **5.4.1 Local Salvage Therapy**

17 **5.4.1.1 For Men with Biochemical Relapse Following Radical Prostatectomy**

18 Surveys of current practice in the UK have shown a large variation in the selection of
19 men for salvage radiotherapy: whether to give radiotherapy as soon as relapse is
20 confirmed or when a PSA threshold is reached; whether to treat just the prostate bed
21 or surrounding tissues as well; and whether or not to use adjuvant hormonal therapy
22 in addition.

23 **Recommendation**

- 24 • Men with biochemical relapse after radical prostatectomy, with no known
25 metastases, should be offered early radical radiotherapy to the prostate bed.

26 **Qualifying statement:** There is a range of evidence to support this recommendation.

27 **Recommendation**

- 28 • Men with biochemical relapse should be considered for entry to appropriate
29 clinical trials, for example RADICALS.

30
31 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are based on GDG consensus.

32 **5.4.1.2 For Men with Biochemical Relapse Following Radical Radiotherapy** 33 **(External Beam or Brachytherapy)**

34 Salvage local therapies for biochemical relapse after radiotherapy (external beam or
35 brachytherapy) include radical prostatectomy, cryotherapy and high intensity focused
36 ultrasound. Radical prostatectomy as salvage has been shown to produce
37 biochemical control in highly selected men but carries a higher risk of incontinence,
38 impotence and rectal damage than when used as primary treatment.

1 5.4.2 Systemic Therapy

2 Hormonal therapy may control symptomatic, progressive or metastatic disease
3 following either surgery or radiation. There are variations in practice with regard to
4 the indications for, and the timings of, hormonal therapy in these situations. Other
5 systemic therapies such as chemotherapy, bisphosphonates and celecoxib are being
6 investigated in continuing clinical trials.

7 Recommendation

- 8 • Hormonal therapy is not routinely recommended for men with biochemical
9 relapse unless they have:
 - 10 • symptomatic local disease progression; or
 - 11 • any proven metastases; or
 - 12 • a PSA doubling time <3months.

13 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from randomised controlled trials to
14 support this recommendation.

15 Clinical Evidence

16 There was little evidence about salvage prostatectomy. Estimates of disease specific
17 survival (Bianco et al. 2005; Ward et al. 2005) and complication rates (Stephenson et
18 al. 2004; Ward et al. 2005) are derived from case series. The NICE interventional
19 procedures guidance on salvage cryotherapy (National Institute for Health and
20 Clinical Excellence 2005) reviewed seven case series with limited follow-up. Five
21 year disease specific survival was 79%, in the only study reporting this outcome.
22

23 A systematic review (Nilsson, Norlen, & Widmark 2004) of ten retrospective case
24 series, concluded that after radical prostatectomy (with adverse factors) adjuvant
25 EBRT seems to result in better disease free survival than salvage or no
26 postoperative EBRT. Similarly salvage EBRT probably results in marginally better
27 outcome than no salvage EBRT. One study (Macdonald *et al.* 2004) reported
28 outcomes after salvage radiotherapy in a series of men with biochemical recurrence
29 only and in men with palpable recurrence. Five year overall survival was 95% in men
30 treated for biochemical recurrence compared to 76% for men with palpable
31 recurrence.
32

33 The literature search did not identify any randomised trials of the treatment of PSA-
34 only recurrence. Indirect evidence comes from a systematic review (Wilt *et al.* 2001)
35 of four randomised control trails (RCTs) of immediate versus deferred hormonal
36 therapy in men with advanced prostate cancer. Meta-analysis showed a small, but
37 not statistically significant improvement in overall and disease specific survival at 1, 2
38 and 5 years, in favour of early therapy. The review concluded that there was
39 insufficient evidence about the use of androgen suppression in men with clinically
40 localised disease, who experience biochemical recurrence without other signs or
41 symptoms. Moul et al. (2004) considered the timing of hormonal therapy in a large
42 case series of men with biochemical recurrence. There was no difference between
43 the metastasis free survival of early and delayed hormonal therapy groups. A
44 subgroup analysis, however, showed significantly better metastasis free survival for
45 high-risk patients treated with early hormonal therapy.
46

1 Health Economic Evaluation

2
3 The literature review on the management of biochemical relapse identified 20
4 potentially relevant papers but none were obtained for appraisal as they did not
5 include any economic evaluations. Since case studies represented the highest
6 quality clinical evidence, the evidence base was considered too weak to warrant any
7 further consideration of cost-effectiveness and de novo economic modelling.

8 Research Recommendation

- 9 • Clinical trials should be set up to examine the effect of local salvage therapies
10 on survival and quality of life in men with biochemical relapse after
11 radiotherapy.

12 References

- 13 Bianco, F. J., Scardino, P. T., Stephenson, A. J., Diblasio, C. J., Fearn, P. A. &
14 Eastham, J. A. (2005) Long-term oncologic results of salvage radical prostatectomy
15 for locally recurrent prostate cancer after radiotherapy. *Int J Radiat. Oncol Biol. Phys.*,
16 62: 448-453.
- 17 Cher, M. L., Bianco, F. J., Lam, J. S., Davis, L. P., Grignon, D. J., Sakr, W. A.,
18 Banerjee, M., Pontes, J. E. & Wood, D. P. (1998) Limited role of radionuclide bone
19 scintigraphy in patients with prostate specific antigen elevations after radical
20 prostatectomy. *J Urol*, 160: 1387-1391.
- 21 Coakley, F. (2004) Endorectal MR imaging MR spectroscopic imaging for locally
22 recurrent prostate cancer after external beam radiation therapy: Preliminary
23 experience. *Radiology*, 233: 441-448.
- 24 Cookson, M. S., Aus, G., Burnett, A. L., Canby-Hagino, E. D., D'Amico, A. V.,
25 Dmochowski, R. R., Eton, D. T., Forman, J. D., Goldenberg, S. L., Hernandez, J.,
26 Higano, C. S., Kraus, S. R., Moul, J. W., Tangen, C., Thrasher, J. B. & Thompson, I.
27 (2007) Variation in the definition of biochemical recurrence in patients treated for
28 localized prostate cancer: the American Urological Association Prostate Guidelines
29 for Localized Prostate Cancer Update Panel report and recommendations for a
30 standard in the re. *J Urol*, 177: 540-545.
- 31 Cox, J. D., Gallagher, M. J., Hammond, E. H., Kaplan, R. S., Schellhammer, P. F.,
32 Crook, J. M., Leibel, S. A., Forman, J. D., Grimm, P. D., Zietman, A. L., Hudson, M.
33 A., Schild, S. A., Beyer, D. C., Hussey, D. H., Thames, H. & Shipley, W. U. (1999)
34 Consensus statements on radiation therapy of prostate cancer: Guidelines for
35 prostate re-biopsy after radiation and for radiation therapy with rising prostate-
36 specific antigen levels after radical prostatectomy. *J Clin Oncol*, 17: 1155-1163.
- 37 D'Amico, A. V., Moul, J., Carroll, P. R., Sun, L., Lubeck, D. & Chen, M. H. (2004)
38 Prostate specific antigen doubling time as a surrogate end point for prostate cancer
39 specific mortality following radical prostatectomy or radiation therapy. *J Urol*, 172:
40 S42-S46.
- 41 Dotan (2005). Pattern of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) failure dictates the
42 probability of a positive bone scan in patients with an increasing PSA after radical
43 prostatectomy. *J Clin Oncol* 23.
- 44 Freedland, S. J., Humphreys, E. B., Mangold, L. A., Eisenberger, M., Dorey, F. J.,
45 Walsh, P. C. & Partin, A. W. (2005) Risk of prostate cancer-specific mortality

- 1 following biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy.[see comment]. *JAMA*,
2 294: 433-439.
- 3 Horwitz, E. M., Thames, H. D., Kuban, D. A., Levy, L. B., Kupelian, P. A., Martinez, A.
4 A., Michalski, J. M., Pisansky, T. M., Sandler, H. M., Shipley, W. U., Zelefsky, M. J.,
5 Hanks, G. E. & Zietman, A. L. (2005) Definitions of biochemical failure that best
6 predict clinical failure in patients with prostate cancer treated with external beam
7 radiation alone: a multi-institutional pooled analysis. *J Urol*, 173: 797-802.
- 8 Jani, A. (2004) Influence of radioimmunoscinigraphy on postprostatectomy
9 radiotherapy treatment decision making. *J Nucl Med*, 45: 571.
- 10 Kane. (2003) Limited value of bone scintigraphy and computed tomography in
11 assessing biochemical failure after radical prostatectomy. *Urology*, 61.
- 12 Kuban, D. A., Thames, H. D. & Shipley, W. U. (2005) Defining recurrence after
13 radiation for prostate cancer. [Review] [34 refs]. *J Urol*, 173: 1871-1878.
- 14 Kuban, D. A., Levy, L. B., Potters, L., Beyer, D. C., Blasko, J. C., Moran, B. J., Ciezki,
15 J. P., Zietman, A. L., Zelefsky, M. J., Pisansky, T. M., Elshaikh, M. & Horwitz, E. M.
16 (2006) Comparison of biochemical failure definitions for permanent prostate
17 brachytherapy. *Int J Radiat. Oncol Biol. Phys.*, 65: 1487-1493.
- 18 Kwan, W., Pickles, T., Duncan, G., Liu, M. & Paltiel, C. (2006) Relationship between
19 delay in radiotherapy and biochemical control in prostate cancer. *Int J Radiat. Oncol*
20 *Biol. Phys.*, 66: 663-668.
- 21 Levesque, P. E., Nieh, P. T., Zinman, L. N., Seldin, D. W. & Libertino, J. A. (1998)
22 Radiolabeled monoclonal antibody indium 111-labeled CYT-356 localizes
23 extraprostatic recurrent carcinoma after prostatectomy. *Urology*, 51: 978-984.
- 24 Macdonald, O. K., Schild, S. E., Vora, S., Andrews, P. E., Ferrigni, R. G., Novicki, D.
25 E., Swanson, S. K. & Wong, W. W. (2004) Salvage radiotherapy for men with
26 isolated rising PSA or locally palpable recurrence after radical prostatectomy: do
27 outcomes differ? *Urology*, 64: 760-764.
- 28 Mohideen, N. (2002) Role of Prostatecint scan in the assessment of patients who
29 undergo radiotherapy for biochemical failure after radical prostatectomy for prostate
30 cancer. *J Urol*, 167: 174.
- 31 Moul, J. W., Wu, H., Sun, L., McLeod, D. G., Amling, C., Donahue, T., Kusuda, L.,
32 Sexton, W., O'Reilly, K., Hernandez, J., Chung, A. & Soderdahl, D. (2004) Early
33 versus delayed hormonal therapy for prostate specific antigen only recurrence of
34 prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy. *J Urol*, 171: 1141-1147.
- 35 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2005) Cryotherapy for recurrent
36 prostate cancer. *Interventional Procedure Guidance* 119.
- 37 Nilsson, S., Norlen, B. J. & Widmark, A. (2004) A systematic overview of radiation
38 therapy effects in prostate cancer. [Review] [390 refs]. *Acta Oncol*, 43: 316-381.
- 39 Okotie, O. T., Aronson, W. J., Wieder, J. A., Liao, Y., Dorey, F., deKernion, J. B. &
40 Freedland, S. J. (2004) Predictors of metastatic disease in men with biochemical
41 failure following radical prostatectomy. *J Urol*, 171: 2260-2264.
- 42 Pickles, T. (2006) Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) bounce and other fluctuations:
43 Which biochemical relapse definition is least prone to PSA false calls? An analysis of
44 2030 men treated for prostate cancer with external beam or brachytherapy with or
45 without adjuvant androge. *International Journal of Radiation Oncology Biology*
46 *Physics*, 64: 1355-1359.

- 1 Pound, C. R., Partin, A. W., Eisenberger, M. A., Chan, D. W., Pearson, J. D. &
2 Walsh, P. C. (1999) Natural history of progression after PSA elevation following
3 radical prostatectomy. *JAMA*, 281: 1591-1597.
- 4 Proano, J. (2006) The impact of a negative (111)indium-capromab pendetide scan
5 before salvage radiotherapy. *J Urol*, 175: 1668-1672.
- 6 Roach, M., Hanks, G., Thames, H., Schellhammer, P., Shipley, W. U., Sokol, G. H. &
7 Sandler, H. (2006) Defining biochemical failure following radiotherapy with or without
8 hormonal therapy in men with clinically localized prostate cancer: recommendations
9 of the RTOG-ASTRO Phoenix Consensus Conference. *Int J Radiat. Oncol Biol. Phys.*,
10 65: 965-974.
- 11 Sala, E., Eberhardt, S. C., Akin, O., Moskowitz, C. S., Onyebuchi, C. N., Kuroiwa, K.,
12 Ishill, N., Zelefsky, M. J., Eastham, J. A. & Hricak, H. (2006) Endorectal MR imaging
13 before salvage prostatectomy: tumor localization and. *Radiology.*, 238: 176-183.
- 14 Scattoni, V., Montorsi, F., Picchio, M., Roscigno, M., Salonia, A., Rigatti, P. & Fazio,
15 F. (2004) Diagnosis of local recurrence after radical prostatectomy. [Review] [58
16 refs]. *BJU Int*, 93: 680-688.
- 17 Sella, T., Schwartz, L. H., Swindle, P. W., Onyebuchi, C. N., Scardino, P. T., Scher,
18 H. I. & Hricak, H. (2004) Suspected local recurrence after radical prostatectomy:
19 endorectal coil MR imaging. *Radiology*, 231: 379-385.
- 20 Silverman, J. M. & Krebs, T. L. (1997) MR imaging evaluation with a transrectal
21 surface coil of local recurrence of prostatic cancer in men who have undergone
22 radical prostatectomy. *AJR Am J Roentgenol.*, 168: 379-385.
- 23 Stephenson, A. J., Kattan, M. W., Eastham, J. A., Dotan, Z. A., Bianco, F. J., Lilja, H.
24 & Scardino, P. T. (2006) Defining biochemical recurrence of prostate cancer after
25 radical prostatectomy: a proposal for a standardized definition. *J Clin Oncol*, 24:
26 3973-3978.
- 27 Stephenson, A. J., Scardino, P. T., Bianco Jr, F. J., Diblasio, C. J., Fearn, P. A. &
28 Eastham, J. A. (2004) Morbidity and functional outcomes of salvage radical
29 prostatectomy for locally recurrent prostate cancer after radiation therapy. *J Urol*,
30 172: 2239-2243.
- 31 Thomas, C. T., Bradshaw, P. T., Pollock, B. H., Montie, J. E., Taylor, J. M., Thames,
32 H. D., McLaughlin, P. W., DeBiose, D. A., Hussey, D. H. & Wahl, R. L. (2003) Indium-
33 111-capromab pendetide radioimmunoscintigraphy and prognosis for durable
34 biochemical response to salvage radiation therapy in men after failed
35 prostatectomy.[see comment]. *J Clin Oncol*, 21: 1715-1721.
- 36 Vicini, F. A., Vargas, C., Abner, A., Kestin, L., Horwitz, E. & Martinez, A. (2005)
37 Limitations in the use of serum prostate specific antigen levels to monitor patients
38 after treatment for prostate cancer. *J Urol*, 173: 1456-1462.
- 39 Ward, J. F., Sebo, T. J., Blute, M. L. & Zincke, H. (2005) Salvage surgery for
40 radiorecurrent prostate cancer: Contemporary outcomes. *J Urol*, 173: 1156-1160.
- 41 Wilt, T., Nair, B., MacDonald, R. & Rutks, I. Early versus deferred androgen
42 suppression in the treatment of advanced prostatic cancer [Cochrane review]. 2001
43 ;(4): .

1 **6. LOCALLY ADVANCED PROSTATE CANCER**

2 **6.1 Introduction**

3 There is no universally agreed definition of locally advanced prostate cancer. It
4 includes a spectrum of disease ranging from men with a tumour that has spread
5 through the capsule of the prostate (pT3a) to those with a large T4 cancer that may
6 be invading the bladder or rectum and has spread to pelvic lymph nodes.

7 The management of men with 'localised' prostate cancer but with a high-risk of
8 extracapsular disease (i.e. Gleason score ≥ 8 , or PSA >20) may also be considered
9 under the heading of locally advanced disease.

10 **6.2 Systemic Therapy**

11 There are two main methods of achieving control of prostate cancer by hormonal
12 manipulation: (i) androgen withdrawal (using luteinising hormone-releasing hormone
13 agonists (LHRHa) or bilateral orchidectomy), which removes the supply of
14 endogenous hormone; or (ii) androgen receptor blockade (anti-androgens), which
15 reduces the effect of endogenous hormones. Both forms of therapy have proven
16 efficacy for different states of the disease. Each method has associated morbidity
17 and potentially specific impacts on the individual's quality of life.

18 Androgen withdrawal commonly causes hot flushes, loss of sexual drive and weight
19 gain. In addition men may become lethargic and describe loss of drive and energy. In
20 the long term, bone mineral density may decrease with an increase risk of
21 pathological fractures.

22 Anti-androgen therapy is less likely to result in sexual dysfunction and/or lethargy.
23 These agents however commonly cause breast enlargement (gynaecomastia) and
24 breast pain (mastalgia).

25 **6.2.1 Neoadjuvant Therapy**

26 Hormonal therapy is sometimes given for several months before radical therapy. It
27 can be used before radical radiotherapy to reduce the size of the prostate. This may
28 reduce the side effects of radiotherapy by allowing smaller radiotherapy fields to be
29 used. Hormonal therapy may also increase the cell killing effect of radiotherapy.
30 Hormonal therapy has also been given before surgery in order to downstage the
31 tumour and in an attempt to improve the outcome after radical prostatectomy.

32 Neoadjuvant androgen withdrawal has been shown to improve disease-free and
33 overall survival in men receiving radical radiotherapy for high-risk localised and
34 locally advanced prostate cancer. The role of neoadjuvant androgen withdrawal for
35 low and intermediate-risk disease treated with modern escalated dose radiotherapy
36 has not been well studied.

37

38

1 Recommendation

- 2 • Neoadjuvant and concurrent LHRHa therapy for 3 to 6 months is
3 recommended for men receiving radical radiotherapy for high-risk localised or
4 locally advanced prostate cancer.

5 **Qualifying statement:** There is supporting evidence from several randomised trials
6 to make this recommendation.

7 6.2.2 Adjuvant Therapy

8 Hormonal therapy has been used following both surgery and radiotherapy with the
9 intention of improving survival. The duration of hormonal therapy has ranged from 6
10 months to indefinite. The side effects of hormonal therapy can be substantial,
11 especially if given for several years, and so the risk/benefit ratio needs to be
12 considered.

13 Recommendation

- 14 • Adjuvant hormonal therapy in addition to radical prostatectomy is not
15 recommended, even in margin positive disease, other than in the context of a
16 clinical trial, for example RADICALS.

17 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from randomised controlled trials of a lack
18 of clinical benefit and significant toxicity to support making this recommendation.

19 Recommendations

- 20 • Adjuvant hormonal therapy for up to 3 years is recommended for men
21 receiving neoadjuvant hormonal therapy and radical radiotherapy for locally
22 advanced or high-risk localised prostate cancer who have a Gleason score of
23 ≥ 8 .
- 24 • Adjuvant hormonal therapy is not recommended for men with a Gleason score
25 of ≤ 7 .

26 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from several randomised trials to support
27 making this recommendation as well as evidence of cost-effectiveness.

28 Clinical Evidence

29 Evidence about neoadjuvant and adjuvant hormonal therapy comes from a
30 systematic review (Kumar *et al.* 2006) of 21 randomised controlled trials.

31

32 *Adjuvant therapy with radical prostatectomy*

33 Randomised trials report significant toxicity with adjuvant therapy in addition to
34 prostatectomy (Kumar *et al.* 2006). With the exception of one small trial in node-
35 positive men (Messing *et al.* 1999), these trials have not demonstrated significant
36 benefit in overall survival. It is possible that modest survival benefits will emerge with
37 longer follow-up.

38

39

40

1 *Adjuvant therapy with radical radiotherapy*

2 Several randomised trials (Kumar *et al.* 2006) have shown that adjuvant androgen
3 withdrawal improves overall survival in men receiving radical radiotherapy. Sub-
4 group analysis suggests that the survival benefit of adjuvant hormonal therapy is
5 greatest in men with high grade disease. Most of the evidence relates to goserelin
6 given for three years or more, but a single randomised trial (Tyrrell *et al.* 2005)
7 suggests the survival benefit of adjuvant bicalutamide monotherapy is comparable.
8

9 **Health Economic Evaluation**

10
11 The literature search on adjuvant therapy identified 1027 potentially relevant papers.
12 Eight of these papers were obtained for appraisal, of which 5 contained relevant
13 economic evaluations (Konski 2005; Konski 2006; Moeremans 2004; Neymark 2001
14 and Samant 2003). None of the studies were performed from a UK NHS perspective.
15

16 All of the studies evaluated the use of neoadjuvant and/or adjuvant hormonal
17 therapy. Four of the 5 studies compared the use of hormonal therapy as an adjunct
18 to radiotherapy. The choice of adjuvant therapy in the fifth study was described as
19 'standard care', but few further details of it were provided. None of the studies
20 assessed the use of hormonal therapies as an adjunct to radical prostatectomy. All
21 five studies appeared to base their economic evaluation on at least one suitable
22 randomised control trial (RCT). However, all 5 were different because they assessed
23 the cost-effectiveness of different treatment regimens. For example, Konski *et al.*
24 (2005) compared the use of hormonal therapy, 2 months prior to the initiation of
25 radiotherapy and for the duration of treatment, to radiotherapy alone. Whereas
26 Konski *et al.* (2006) compared the use of a similar hormonal regimen with hormonal
27 therapy continuing for 2 years after radiotherapy had finished. The overall quality of
28 the evaluations was judged to be good. No study reported a base case incremental
29 cost-effectiveness ratio above £30,000 per life-year/QALY gained. Taking into
30 account both the quality of the clinical evidence and the results of the cost-
31 effectiveness analyses, there was considered to be at least reasonable evidence to
32 support the economic value of hormonal therapies in this setting.

33 **6.2.3 Hormonal Therapy Alone**

34 For many men with locally advanced prostate cancer, hormonal therapy will be the
35 primary therapy (see Chapter 7 for more information on primary hormonal therapy).
36 Bicalutamide monotherapy is sometimes used as an alternative to LHRHa's for men
37 with locally advanced disease.

38 **6.2.4 Other Adjuvant Therapies**

39 It has been postulated that bisphosphonates might delay or prevent the development
40 of bone metastases in men with no detectable metastatic spread. Bisphosphonates
41 are also used in the treatment of age-related osteoporosis and, since osteoporosis is
42 a side effect of androgen withdrawal therapy, bisphosphonates have been studied as
43 a preventive measure in men who are starting long-term hormonal therapy with
44 LHRHas. Other agents such as cox-2 inhibitors and chemotherapy are being
45 investigated as adjuvant therapy for men with locally advanced prostate cancer.

46

1 Recommendation

- 2 • Bisphosphonates should not be used for the prevention of bone metastases in
3 men with prostate cancer.

4 **Qualifying statement:** There is good quality evidence from 1 RCT of a lack of
5 clinical effect to make this recommendation. There is also evidence for a lack of cost-
6 effectiveness.

7 Clinical Evidence

8 A good quality placebo controlled randomised trial (Mason *et al.* 2007) examined
9 clodronate for the prevention of bone metastases in men with localised or locally
10 advanced prostate cancer. There was no significant difference in overall survival,
11 symptomatic bone metastases or prostate cancer death between the treatment arms.
12 Dose modifying adverse events were more likely in the clodronate group.

14 Health Economic Evaluation

15
16 The literature search on the use of bisphosphonates for the prevention of skeletal-
17 related events (SREs) identified 153 potentially relevant papers. Thirteen of these
18 papers were obtained for appraisal, of which 1 full economic evaluation was identified
19 and reviewed (Reed *et al.* 2004). It examined 4 mg zoledronic acid (versus placebo),
20 every 3 weeks, in men with advanced-stage prostate cancer and a history of
21 metastatic bone disease as a method of preventing SREs. It was a non-UK based
22 cost-utility analysis that was performed from a health services perspective. Results
23 were presented in 2000-2002 US\$.

24
25 The analysis was based on a single RCT of 15-months duration; treatment costs and
26 benefits were not extrapolated past this period. Approximately 650 patients were
27 entered into the RCT, however only information relating to 360 was included in the
28 economic evaluation (for which baseline details were not provided). Utility scores
29 were calculated using the EQ-5D questionnaire, which were recorded every 3-
30 months as part of the trial design. Resource use was also collected prospectively
31 alongside the RCT.

32
33 The results from the analysis showed that patients receiving zoledronic acid
34 experienced fewer hospital days than people receiving placebo, although this
35 difference was not statistically significant at conventional levels (mean of 5.6 vs 8.0
36 days respectively; $p = 0.20$). The additional healthcare costs of providing zoledronic
37 acid plus its administration was approximately \$5,700. The baseline incremental
38 cost-effectiveness ratio per additional QALY was approximately \$160,000, although
39 this varied considerably during the sensitivity analysis. Using \$2=£1, translates to an
40 ICER of approximately £80,000 per additional QALY. The authors concluded that the
41 use of zoledronic acid for the prevention of SREs for people with metastatic prostate
42 cancer was unlikely to be cost-effective, which appears to be a reasonable
43 conclusion given the quality of the evidence.

44
45
46
47

1 **6.3 Local Management of Locally Advanced Prostate Cancer**

2 **6.3.1 Radiotherapy**

3 The role of radiotherapy in the management of locally advanced prostate cancer is
4 unclear. For those with high-risk locally advanced disease (>25% risk of lymph node
5 spread (Partin *et al.* 2001) the value of radiotherapy in addition to hormonal therapy
6 has been studied in a randomised clinical trial (Mason *et al.* 2000) but the results are
7 not yet available. If radiotherapy is used there are unresolved issues relating to dose,
8 technique and volume.

9 Treatment to the prostate alone is currently the standard approach to radical
10 radiotherapy for prostate cancer in the UK. In common with other cancer sites (e.g.
11 breast), there may be a benefit from treating regional lymph nodes as well. The best
12 available data on this issue, although immature, are from the RTOG 9413 trial.

13 **6.3.1.1 Lymph Node Involvement**

14 Men with locally advanced prostate cancer have a high-risk of pelvic lymph node
15 spread. Improvements in radiological imaging may lead to better identification of
16 spread to pelvic lymph nodes. Pathological lymph node staging may be used when
17 deciding on the treatment of selected high-risk men. However it is not clear whether
18 those with proven lymph node metastases benefit from radiotherapy to the pelvis and
19 prostate or whether they should be treated with hormonal therapy alone. Studies
20 have shown improved survival in men treated with hormonal therapy and
21 radiotherapy compared to historical series treated with hormonal therapy alone, but
22 the improvement may be due to improved staging and case selection.

23 **Recommendation**

- 24 • Pelvic radiotherapy should be considered in men with >15% risk (estimated
25 using the Roach formula (%LN risk = 2/3 PSA + [10x (Gleason score - 6)]) of
26 pelvic lymph node involvement who are to receive neoadjuvant hormonal
27 therapy and radical radiotherapy to the prostate.

28 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on evidence from one large,
29 randomised trial.

30 **Clinical Evidence**

31 The evidence comprises one large randomised trial (Lawton *et al.* 2005). This trial
32 shows acceptable toxicity and a benefit in biochemical control, which might translate
33 into a more clinically meaningful benefit with longer follow-up.

34 **Health Economic Evaluation**

35 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
36 priority, therefore no attempt has been made to review or summarise the relevant
37 cost-effectiveness literature.

38
39

1 **6.3.1.2 Brachytherapy Boost**

2 Brachytherapy can be combined with external beam radiotherapy to deliver a high-
3 dose boost to the prostate in locally advanced disease.

4 Low dose-rate, implant brachytherapy or high dose-rate brachytherapy have been
5 combined with external beam radiotherapy to the low pelvis in those with high-risk
6 localised disease but there are no comparative data.

7 **6.3.1.3 Post-operative Radiotherapy**

8 After radical prostatectomy, men with evidence of extracapsular spread have been
9 offered post-operative radiotherapy in an attempt to prevent local recurrence.
10 Radiotherapy may also be offered to men with biochemical failure and no evidence of
11 metastatic spread (see Chapter 5).

12 **Recommendation**

- 13 • Immediate post-operative radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy is not
14 recommended, even in margin positive disease, other than in the context of a
15 clinical trial, for example RADICALS.

16 **Qualifying statement:** There are two randomised trials which have not shown any
17 improvement in survival from immediate post operative radiotherapy.

18 **Clinical Evidence**

19
20 Evidence about adjuvant radiotherapy comes from two randomised trials (Bolla *et al.*
21 2005; Thompson, Jr. *et al.* 2006). There was no significant effect of adjuvant
22 radiotherapy on overall or disease specific survival, although follow-up in the Bolla
23 trial is not yet long enough to establish survival outcomes. Biochemical failure and
24 clinical failure were significantly less likely in men receiving adjuvant radiotherapy.
25 Complications were significantly increased in those receiving adjuvant radiotherapy
26 when compared to standard care.

27 **Health Economic Evidence**

28 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
29 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
30 reviewed.

31 **6.3.2 Surgery**

32 The progression-free and overall survival for men with pT3 disease is worse than
33 those with pT2. Clinical or radiological evidence of T3 disease is usually a
34 contraindication to radical surgery; however, men with T3 cancers are sometimes
35 treated with radical prostatectomy. The appropriate extent of lymphadenectomy and
36 its influence on survival is uncertain.

1 **6.3.3 Other Local Therapies**

2 Cryotherapy or HIFU are used in some centres for men with T2/3 disease as a
3 primary treatment. Recommendations on the use of cryotherapy and HIFU can be
4 found in Chapter 4.

5 Recommendations on the follow-up of men with localised prostate cancer can be
6 found in Chapter 4. These recommendations also apply to men with locally advanced
7 prostate cancer.

8 **Research Recommendations**

- 9 • More research should be conducted into the prevention and management of
10 osteoporosis in men receiving long-term withdrawal deprivation therapy.
- 11 • The role of radical surgery and extended lymphadenectomy as primary
12 therapy for locally advanced prostate cancer should be studied in clinical trials.

13 **References**

- 14 Bolla, M., van, P. H., Collette, L., van, C. P., Vekemans, K., Da, P. L., de Reijke, T.
15 M., Verbaeys, A., Bosset, J. F., van, V. R., Marechal, J. M., Scalliet, P.,
16 Haustermans, K., Pierart, M. & European Organization for Research and Treatment
17 of Cancer. (2005) Postoperative radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy: a
18 randomised controlled trial (EORTC trial 22911). *Lancet*, 366: 572-578.
- 19 Konski, AE. al. (2005) Economic analysis of a phase III clinical trial evaluating the
20 addition of total androgen suppression to radiation versus radiation alone for locally
21 advanced prostate cancer (Radiation Therapy Oncology Group protocol 86-10)
22 *International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics* 63(3): 788-794.
- 23 Konski, A et al. (2006) Long-term hormone therapy and radiation is cost-effective for
24 patients with locally advanced prostate carcinoma. *Cancer* 106(1). 51-57.
- 25 Kumar, S., Shelley, M., Harrison, C., Coles, B., Wilt, T. & Mason, M. (2006). Neo-
26 adjuvant and adjuvant hormone therapy for localised prostate cancer [protocol for a
27 Cochrane review]. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006 Issue 2*
28 Chichester (UK): John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
- 29 Lawton, C. A., DeSilvio, M., Roach, I. M., Uhl, V., Krisch, E. B., Seider, M. J.,
30 Rotman, M., Jones, C., Asbell, S. O., Valicenti, R. K., Han, B. H. & Thomas Jr, C. R.
31 An Update of the Phase III Trial Comparing Whole-Pelvic (WP) to Prostate Only (PO)
32 Radiotherapy and Neoadjuvant to Adjuvant Total Androgen Suppression (TAS):
33 Updated Analysis of RTOG 94-13. 47th Annual ASTRO Meeting. *International*
34 *Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics* 63, S19. 2005.
- 35 Mason MD, Brewster S, Moffat LE, Kirkbride P, Cowan RA, Malone P, Sydes M,
36 Parmar MKB. (2000) Randomised trials in early prostate cancer: II: hormone therapy
37 and radiotherapy for locally advanced disease: a question is still unanswered. MRC
38 PR07 Trial Management Group. *Clinical Oncology* 12(4):215-6
39
- 40 Mason, M. D., Sydes, M. R., Glaholm, J., Langley, R. E., Huddart, R. A., Sokal, M.,
41 Stott, M., Robinson, A. C., James, N. D., Parmar, M. K., Dearnaley, D. P. & Medical
42 Research Council, P. R. (2007) Oral sodium clodronate for nonmetastatic prostate

- 1 cancer--results of a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial: Medical
2 Research Council PR04 (ISRCTN61384873). *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 99: 765-776.
- 3 Messing, E. M., Manola, J., Sarosdy, M., Wilding, G., Crawford, E. D. & Trump, D.
4 (1999) Immediate hormonal therapy compared with observation after radical
5 prostatectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy in men with node-positive prostate
6 cancer. *N Engl J Med*, 341: 1781-1788.
- 7 Moremans K et al. (2004) Cost-effectiveness analysis of bicalutamide (Casodex) for
8 the treatment of early prostate cancer. *Value in Health* 7(10): 472-481.
- 9 Neymark, NI et al. (2001) Cost-effectiveness of the addition of early hormonal
10 therapy in locally advanced prostate cancer: Results decisively determined by the
11 cut-off time-point chosen for the analysis. *European Journal of Cancer* 37(14): 1768-
12 1774.
- 13 Partin AW, Mangold LA, Lamm DM, et al. (2001) Contemporary update of prostate
14 cancer staging nomograms (Partin Tables) for the new millennium. *Urology* 58:843
- 15 Samant, RS. (2003) A cost-outcome analysis of long-term adjuvant goserelin in
16 addition to radiotherapy for locally advanced prostate cancer. *Seminars in Urologic
17 Oncology*. 21(3): 171-177.
- 18 Thompson, I. M., Jr., Tangen, C. M., Paradelo, J., Lucia, M. S., Miller, G., Troyer, D.,
19 Messing, E., Forman, J., Chin, J., Swanson, G., Canby-Hagino, E. & Crawford, E. D.
20 (2006) Adjuvant radiotherapy for pathologically advanced prostate cancer: a
21 randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*, 296: 2329-2335.
- 22 Tyrrell, C. J., Payne, H., See, W. A., McLeod, D. G., Wirth, M. P., Iversen, P.,
23 Armstrong, J. & Morris, C. (2005) Bicalutamide ('Casodex') 150 mg as adjuvant to
24 radiotherapy in patients with localised or locally advanced prostate cancer: Results
25 from the randomised Early Prostate Cancer Programme. *Radiotherapy & Oncology*,
26 76: 4-10.

1 **7. METASTATIC PROSTATE CANCER**

2 **7.1 Introduction**

3 This chapter addresses the clinical needs of men with prostate cancer which has
4 spread beyond the prostate and pelvic lymph nodes. Bone metastases are common
5 and may cause pain and reduced mobility. The majority of men with metastatic
6 prostate cancer will respond well to hormonal therapy which often keeps the disease
7 controlled for several years. Once the disease becomes refractory to hormonal
8 therapy, the control of symptoms and measures that improve quality of life may
9 become as important as treatments that may prolong life.

10 **7.2 Hormonal Therapy**

11 Androgen withdrawal by either surgical or medical castration can typically control the
12 disease for several years. Bilateral orchidectomy has been an effective treatment for
13 metastatic prostate cancer for over 60 years. The use of luteinising hormone-
14 releasing hormone agonists (LHRHa) has been compared with bilateral orchidectomy
15 in several randomised trials.

16 Advantages of LHRHa include the possibility of intermittent use (see below). Their
17 disadvantages include the cost, and problems with compliance and administration.

18 LHRHa may be given alone (after a short period of anti-androgen therapy to prevent
19 tumour flare) or in combination with an anti-androgen as maximal androgen
20 blockade. When bilateral orchidectomy or LHRHa monotherapy fails an anti-
21 androgen may be added as second-line hormonal therapy.

22 **Recommendation**

- 23 • Bilateral orchidectomy should be recommended as an alternative to
24 continuous LHRHa therapy.

25 **Qualifying Statement:** There are randomised studies which show comparable
26 survival benefit and side effects for bilateral orchidectomy. A full systematic review of
27 the published economic evaluations is currently in progress.

28 **7.3 Androgen Withdrawal Versus Combined Androgen Blockade (CAB)**

29 Androgen withdrawal alone is the standard hormonal therapy for metastatic prostate
30 cancer. It has been postulated that the addition of an oral anti-androgen to androgen
31 withdrawal therapy could improve treatment efficacy and a large number of
32 randomised controlled trials have studied the effect on survival.

33 **Recommendation**

- 34 • Combined androgen blockade is not recommended as first-line treatment.

35 **Qualifying statement:** Evidence shows only a modest survival benefit for combined
36 androgen blockade and high costs.

1 7.4 Anti-androgen Monotherapy

2 Anti-androgen monotherapy has been studied in the hope that it would be less toxic
3 than androgen withdrawal but with comparable effectiveness. Several randomised
4 trials have shown that loss of sexual function is less marked with anti-androgen
5 monotherapy than with androgen withdrawal, but anti-androgen monotherapy is
6 associated with increased gynaecomastia and is a less effective treatment for
7 metastatic disease than androgen withdrawal in terms of overall survival.

8 Recommendation

- 9 • For men who are willing to accept the adverse impact on overall survival and
10 gynaecomastia in the hope of retaining sexual function, anti-androgen
11 monotherapy with bicalutamide^{††††} is appropriate.

12 **Qualifying statement:** Evidence from randomised trials confirms the relative
13 protection from loss of sexual function.

14 Recommendation

- 15 • Men taking bicalutamide who do not maintain satisfactory sexual function,
16 should stop bicalutamide and be treated with androgen withdrawal.

17 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on GDG consensus alone.

18 7.5 Intermittent Androgen Withdrawal

19 The standard approach to hormonal therapy for metastatic prostate cancer has been
20 continuous treatment. Long-term results from uncontrolled studies of intermittent
21 therapy have shown satisfactory outcomes. Several randomised trials are testing
22 whether intermittent therapy might be less toxic, and whether overall survival is
23 unimpaired or even improved. These trials are not yet mature. Intermittent therapy
24 will probably be cheaper than continuous therapy despite the need for closer
25 monitoring.

26 Recommendation

- 27 • Intermittent androgen withdrawal may be offered as an alternative to
28 continuous androgen withdrawal, especially to men with severe side effects.

29 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on GDG consensus in the
30 light of the results of uncontrolled studies.

31 Clinical Evidence

32 *Orchidectomy versus LHRHa's*

33 Evidence came from a systematic review of thirteen randomised trials of hormonal
34 monotherapy in prostate cancer (Seidenfeld *et al.* 2000; Seidenfeld *et al.* 2001).
35 Meta-analysis suggested comparable overall survival benefit between orchidectomy

^{††††} The BNF states that bicalutamide monotherapy should be at a dose of 150mg daily. A lower dose (50mg) is used for CAB.

1 and LHRHa's. The evidence about adverse effects was less reliable due to reporting
2 inconsistencies between trials, although adverse event rates appeared similar in
3 orchidectomy and LHRHa treatment groups.

4 *LHRHa's versus combined androgen blockade*

5 Evidence from 27 randomised trials, summarised in two systematic reviews (Prostate
6 Cancer Trialists 2000; Seidenfeld *et al.* 2001), shows a small survival advantage with
7 combined androgen blockade using non-steroidal anti-androgens. The estimate of
8 five year overall survival from meta-analysis was 28% for men treated with combined
9 androgen blockade compared with 25% for those treated with androgen withdrawal
10 alone (Prostate Cancer Trialists 2000). Using the rate of treatment withdrawal as a
11 index of treatment toxicity, Samson, Seidenfeld and co-workers (Samson *et al.* 2002;
12 Seidenfeld *et al.* 2001) reported that men treated with an LHRH agonist alone
13 withdrew from therapy at a rate of 4% or less compared with a rate of 8% or more in
14 men receiving combined androgen blockade (CAB).

15 *Anti-androgen monotherapy*

16
17 Meta-analysis of thirteen randomised trials of hormonal monotherapy (Seidenfeld *et*
18 *al.* 2000; Seidenfeld *et al.* 2001) showed a trend towards poorer overall survival with
19 anti-androgen monotherapy than with castration. The two therapies had different
20 toxicity profiles. Gynaecomastia was more likely with non-steroidal anti-androgens,
21 whereas hot flushes and reduced sexual function were more likely with androgen
22 withdrawal. The proportion withdrawing from anti-androgen monotherapy and LHRHa
23 treatment was similar, however, suggesting comparable tolerability (Seidenfeld *et al.*
24 2000; Seidenfeld *et al.* 2001).

25 *Intermittent androgen withdrawal*

26
27 The literature search identified no reliable evidence about the impact of intermittent
28 androgen withdrawal on survival. One small randomised trial (de Leval *et al.* 2002)
29 comparing intermittent with continuous androgen withdrawal reported that most
30 patients experienced slight to moderate adverse effects, but these usually resolved in
31 the intermittent androgen withdrawal group in the periods when the men were off
32 treatment.

33 **Health Economic Evaluation**

34
35 A full systematic review of the published economic evaluations is currently in
36 progress.

37 **7.6 Interventions for Managing Complications of Hormonal Therapy**

38
39 Randomised trials of interventions for complications of hormonal therapy are limited
40 to the management of hot flushes, gynaecomastia and tiredness. Our
41 recommendations are therefore limited to the evidence available.

42
43 The interventions for hot flushes that have been studied are diethylstilboestrol,
44 cyproterone acetate, megestrol acetate, clonidine, and oestrogen patches. Since the
45 severity and frequency of hot flushes can improve spontaneously over time, non-
46 randomised studies are of uncertain value. Interventions that have been used for hot
47 flushes, but have not been studied in randomised trials, include SSRIs, sage, black
48 cohosh and acupuncture.

1 Gynaecomastia is a common, troublesome complication of long-term bicalutamide
2 monotherapy. Randomised trials have studied the use of tamoxifen and of
3 prophylactic radiotherapy to the breast buds. Although tamoxifen was shown to be an
4 effective treatment of bicalutamide induced gynaecomastia, there is a theoretical
5 concern that, as an anti-oestrogen, it could have an adverse effect on prostate
6 cancer control.

7 **Recommendations**

- 8 • Synthetic progestogens are recommended as first-line therapy for the
9 management of troublesome hot flushes. If oral therapy is used it should be
10 given for 2 weeks, and re-started, if effective, on recurrence of symptoms.
- 11 • Men starting long-term (>6 months) bicalutamide monotherapy daily should
12 receive prophylactic radiotherapy to both breast buds within the first month of
13 treatment. A single fraction of 8Gy using orthovoltage radiotherapy is
14 recommended.
- 15 • If radiotherapy is unsuccessful in preventing gynacomastia, weekly tamoxifen
16 should be considered.
- 17 • Men starting androgen withdrawal therapy should be informed that regular
18 resistance exercise reduces fatigue and improves quality of life.

19 **Qualifying statement:** These recommendations are based on GDG consensus,
20 informed by several small randomised control trials (RCTs).

21 **Clinical Evidence**

22 *Hot flushes*

23 Placebo controlled randomised trials have demonstrated that diethylstilbestrol (Atala
24 et al. 1992) and megestrol acetate (Loprinzi et al. 1994) are effective in the treatment
25 of hot flushes in men treated with hormonal therapy. Very small randomised trials
26 have shown beneficial results from the use of oestrogen patches (Gerber et al. 2000)
27 and cyproterone acetate (Eaton & McGuire 1983). A small case series (Langenstroer
28 et al. 2005) suggested that intramuscular medroxyprogesterone acetate reduced the
29 frequency and severity of hot flushes.

31 *Gynaecomastia*

32 A systematic review (Di Lorenzo *et al.* 2005) considered evidence from randomised
33 trials of radiotherapy or tamoxifen for the prevention and treatment of gynaecomastia
34 and breast pain associated with anti-androgens. A narrative review of the evidence
35 supported the effectiveness of both radiotherapy and tamoxifen, although there were
36 theoretical concerns that, as an anti-oestrogen, tamoxifen could reduce the
37 effectiveness of hormonal therapy.

38 **Health Economic Evaluation**

39 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
40 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
41 reviewed.

1 **7.7 Hormone Refractory Prostate Cancer**

2 There is no universally accepted definition of hormone refractory disease. The
3 disease can be considered to be hormone refractory when androgen withdrawal
4 therapy or maximal androgen blockade are no longer controlling the prostate specific
5 antigen (PSA) or the symptoms of the disease, or when there is radiological evidence
6 of progression. However hormone refractory disease, so defined, may still respond to
7 agents such as oestrogens or corticosteroids that probably work via the androgen
8 receptor. Even when the disease becomes hormone refractory the androgen receptor
9 on the cancer cells can remain active and LHRHa therapy is usually continued.

10 There is no known curative therapy for hormone refractory disease and so the goals
11 of treatment are to improve survival and quality of life and to control symptoms.

12 **7.8 Chemotherapy**

13 Chemotherapy is usually given to men with symptomatic progression but
14 asymptomatic men with metastatic disease and a rapidly rising PSA may also benefit
15 from chemotherapy.

16 The combination of docetaxel and prednisolone is the only chemotherapy regime
17 licensed for use in hormone refractory prostate cancer. The side effects of this
18 combination can be substantial and it may not be possible to use docetaxel if the
19 disease has progressed to a stage where it is causing significant symptoms. Men
20 with poor performance status who may not tolerate docetaxel are usually treated with
21 the combination of mitoxantrone and prednisolone.

22 Several trials are investigating the use of docetaxel earlier in the course of the
23 disease.

24 It is not clear whether there is a significant benefit from second line treatment with
25 mitoxantrone or newer chemotherapy drugs for men who have failed docetaxel.

26 New chemotherapy regimens, targeted therapies and cancer vaccines are currently
27 in clinical trial in prostate cancer.

28 **Recommendations (from NICE technology appraisal guidance 101)**

- 29 • Docetaxel is recommended, within its licensed indications, as a treatment
30 option for men with hormone refractory metastatic prostate cancer only if their
31 Karnofsky performance status score is 60% or more.
- 32 • It is recommended that treatment with docetaxel should be stopped:
 - 33 • at the completion of planned treatment of up to 10 cycles, or
 - 34 • if severe adverse events occur, or
 - 35 • in the presence of progression of disease as evidenced by clinical or
 - 36 laboratory criteria, or by imaging studies.
- 37 • Repeat cycles of treatment with docetaxel are not recommended if the disease
38 recurs after completion of the planned course of chemotherapy.

1 **Qualifying Statement:** This recommendation is taken from the NICE Health
2 Technology Assessment TA101 (NICE, 2006).

3 **Recommendation**

- 4 • When men develop biochemical evidence of hormone refractory disease their
5 management options should be discussed by the urology multidisciplinary
6 team (MDT) with a view to seeking an oncological and/or specialist palliative
7 care opinion as appropriate.

8 **Qualifying statement:** There was GDG consensus that the management of these
9 men is not usually discussed at MDT meetings despite the recommendations in the
10 NICE cancer service guidance.

11 **7.9 Oestrogens and Steroids**

12 Diethylstilboestrol is a synthetic oestrogen that can reduce the PSA level in men with
13 hormone refractory disease. There is also research interest in the use of transdermal
14 oestrogens as an alternative to LHRHa's in newly diagnosed prostate cancer.

15 Corticosteroids can be very useful in men with hormone refractory prostate cancer
16 (HRPC). Low dose steroids can reduce the production of adrenal androgens in men
17 on androgen withdrawal by suppressing adrenocorticotrophic hormone ACTH
18 secretion from the pituitary. This effect can be achieved by physiological doses of
19 corticosteroids such as dexamethasone, prednisolone or hydrocortisone. Other
20 mechanisms of action have also been postulated to explain the fall in PSA that has
21 been reported with corticosteroids. Higher dose steroids can have an anti-
22 inflammatory effect on bone metastases.

23 **Recommendation**

- 24 • Dexamethasone at a dose of 0.5mg daily⁺⁺⁺ is recommended as third line
25 hormonal therapy after androgen withdrawal and anti-androgen therapy.

26 **Qualifying statement:** evidence from several case series to support this
27 recommendation.

28 **Clinical Evidence**

29 Evidence, from observational studies, suggests a PSA response rate of 50% or more
30 with low dose dexamethasone therapy in men with castration refractory prostate
31 cancer, compared with 21–26% for prednisolone and 21.5% for hydrocortisone.
32 There was no evidence, however, about the relative effect of different corticosteroids
33 on survival.

34 **Health Economic Evaluation**

35 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
36 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
37 reviewed.

⁺⁺⁺ Often used at higher doses in other indications.

1 7.10 Imaging

2 The natural history of clinically occult spinal cord compression in prostate cancer is
3 unknown and there is little published data on the use of spinal Magnetic Resonance
4 Imaging (MRI) in this clinical setting. The value of prophylactic irradiation for
5 asymptomatic cord compression is unclear. NICE is currently developing a clinical
6 guideline on metastatic spinal cord compression is currently in development which
7 may expand these recommendations.

8 Recommendation

- 9 • Men with hormone refractory prostate cancer shown to have extensive
10 disease in the spine, for example on a bone scan, should have spinal MRI if
11 they develop any spinal related symptoms.

12 **Qualifying statement:** There was strong GDG consensus that it was important to try
13 to identify spinal cord compression in high-risk men as early as possible to enable
14 them to receive the necessary treatment.

15 Recommendation

- 16 • The routine use of spinal MRI for all men with hormone refractory prostate
17 cancer and known bone metastases is not recommended.

18 **Qualifying statement:** There is no evidence to support routine use of MRI in this
19 situation.

20 Clinical Evidence

21 A prospective case series (Bayley *et al.* 2001) reported screening for sub-clinical
22 spinal cord compression using MRI in a group of men with vertebral bone metastases
23 from prostate cancer but without symptoms of spinal cord compression. 32% of the
24 group had sub-clinical spinal cord compression on MRI. Another series
25 (Venkitaraman *et al.* 2007) reported the results of spinal MRI in men with prostate
26 cancer considered at high risk of developing spinal cord compression, but without
27 functional neurological deficit. Radiological spinal canal compromise was seen in
28 27% of these men. Neither of the studies reported outcomes following MRI screening
29 for spinal cord compression.

30
31 Risk factors for radiological spinal cord compression in men with metastatic prostate
32 cancer were extensive bone metastasis (Venkitaraman *et al.* 2007; Bayley *et al.*
33 2001), duration of hormonal therapy (Bayley *et al.* 2001) and back pain
34 (Venkitaraman *et al.* 2007).

35 Health Economic Evaluation

36 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
37 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
38 reviewed.

39
40

1 **7.11 Bone Targeted Therapies**

2 Men with prostate cancer may benefit from bone targeted therapies such as
3 bisphosphonates and Strontium-89, either as treatment for symptomatic bone
4 metastases; as a preventive measure to delay or suppress the metastases or as
5 treatment for the osteoporosis caused by hormonal therapy.

6 Bisphosphonates are also used to treat cancer-related hypercalcaemia.

7 Androgen withdrawal therapy is a risk factor for the development of osteoporosis.

8 **Recommendation**

- 9 • The use of bisphosphonates to prevent or reduce the complications of bone
10 metastases in men with HRPC is not recommended.

11 **Qualifying statement:** There is inconsistent evidence, from several RCTs, of the
12 effectiveness of bisphosphonates in preventing or reducing complications of bone
13 metastases.

14 **Recommendation**

- 15 • Bisphosphonates for pain relief may be considered when other treatments,
16 including analgesics and palliative radiotherapy, have failed. The choice of drug
17 should be based on the cost and either the oral or intravenous route of
18 administration should be chosen according to convenience and tolerability.

19 **Qualifying statement:** A systematic review supports this recommendation.

20 **Clinical Evidence**

21 Evidence came from a systematic review of ten randomised trials (Yuen *et al.* 2006).
22 Meta-analysis showed a trend favouring bisphosphonates over placebo for the relief
23 of pain from bone metastases in men with prostate cancer. There was no significant
24 difference, however, between the analgesic consumption of bisphosphonate and
25 placebo groups. Meta-analysis showed a modest reduction in skeletal events with
26 bisphosphonate treatment (using trial authors' definitions of skeletal events). The
27 estimated rates for skeletal events were 37.8% and 43.0% for the bisphosphonate
28 and placebo groups respectively: an absolute risk difference of 5.2%.

29 There was inconsistent evidence about the effect of bisphosphonates on the rate of
30 pathological fractures, and no conclusions could be drawn. The rates of spinal cord
31 compression, bone surgery and bone radiotherapy did not differ significantly between
32 bisphosphonate and placebo groups. There were no significant group differences in
33 overall survival or in quality of life.

34 **Health Economic Evaluation**

35 The literature review identified 153 potentially relevant papers, but none were
36 obtained for appraisal as they did not include any economic evaluations. The GDG
37 considered there to be insufficient clinical information available to enable robust
38 economic modelling.

1 Recommendations

- 2 • Bisphosphonates should not be used routinely in men receiving androgen
3 withdrawal therapy for prostate cancer.
- 4 • The recommendations in the NICE Clinical Guideline on Osteoporosis should be
5 followed once it is published.

6 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on a lack of evidence that the
7 incidence of bone fractures is reduced.

8 Clinical Evidence

9 There was consistent evidence from randomised trials (Diamond *et al.* 2001; Magno
10 *et al.* 2005b; Nelson *et al.* 2006; Smith *et al.* 2001; Smith *et al.* 2003), that treatment
11 with bisphosphonates increases the bone mineral density of the lumbar spine in men
12 receiving hormonal therapy for prostate cancer. However, there was no evidence
13 about the effect of bisphosphonates on the rate of symptomatic fractures: the single
14 trial reporting this outcome had insufficient follow-up (Smith *et al.* 2003). There was
15 no significant difference in the rate of severe adverse effects in bisphosphonate and
16 placebo arms in three trials that reported this outcome (Nelson *et al.* 2006; Smith *et*
17 *al.* 2001; Smith *et al.* 2003).

18

19 Health Economic Evaluation

20

21 The literature review identified 153 potentially relevant papers, but none were
22 obtained for appraisal as they did not include any economic evaluations. No
23 economic modelling was undertaken as the GDG concluded evidence from one
24 available RCT showed that bisphosphonates did not delay or reduce the rate of
25 development of bone metastases.

26 External beam radiotherapy

27 External beam radiotherapy is an effective way of improving pain from bone
28 metastases and is useful as treatment for spinal cord compression caused by bone
29 metastases in the vertebrae.

30 Strontium-89 (Sr-89)

31 Sr-89 is a beta-emitting radioactive isotope which is given intravenously and is taken
32 up preferentially in bone metastases. In comparison with standard care, Sr-89 has
33 been shown, in systematic reviews of randomised trials, to improve pain control, and
34 prevent new sites of pain. It has a favourable toxicity profile, but may compromise
35 ability to deliver subsequent myelosuppressive chemotherapy.

36 Recommendation

- 37 • Sr-89 should be considered for men with painful bone metastases from HRPC
38 especially for men who are unlikely to receive myelosuppressive chemotherapy.

39 **Qualifying statement:** The evidence of cost effectiveness is weak. However there
40 was GDG consensus that the recommendation should be made based on several
41 RCTs, which demonstrated the clinical benefit of Sr-89.

1 **Clinical Evidence**

2 Systematic reviews of randomised trials (Bauman *et al.* 2005; Brundage *et al.* 1998;
3 Figuls *et al.* 2003; Finlay *et al.* 2005; Loblaw *et al.* 2003; McQuay *et al.* 1999)
4 suggest that strontium-89 is effective for the control of pain from bony metastases but
5 there was no evidence of an overall survival benefit for patients treated with
6 strontium-89.

8 **Health Economic Evaluation**

10 The literature review on Sr-89 identified 50 potentially relevant papers. Nineteen of
11 these papers were obtained for appraisal of which 2 were identified and reviewed
12 (McEwan *et al.* 1994; Malmberg 1997). None contained full economic evaluations,
13 only cost comparisons. All three evaluations compared the costs of providing Sr-89
14 as an adjunct to radiotherapy to patients with HRPC and bone metastases compared
15 with radiotherapy alone.

17 The study by McEwan *et al.* (1994) was based on a small Canadian (CAN\$) RCT
18 (n=29), although the costing was undertaken retrospectively. All patients were
19 followed-up until death, which was at a median of 30-34 weeks depending on the
20 treatment arm. The study demonstrated a number of clinical benefits including an
21 improvement in quality of life indices. No price year for the costing was provided. The
22 authors stated that the mean treatment cost per patient for the strontium group was
23 Can\$16,570 and Can\$23,688 for placebo (approximately £7,700-£11,000). However,
24 evidence from within the manuscript suggests that these costs are incorrect, and that
25 the placebo arm was less costly than the strontium-89 arm. No sensitivity analysis
26 was performed, and the evaluation was generally considered to be of poor quality.

28 The evaluation by Malmberg *et al.* (1997) also evaluated the costs of external
29 radiotherapy alone versus external radiotherapy with Sr-89, from a Swedish societal
30 perspective (that is, both direct healthcare and indirect costs were included). The
31 analysis was based on a single RCT, but longer terms costs were estimated. That is,
32 the time horizon for the analysis was a patient's lifetime. The costs relating to
33 radiotherapy included the costs of skeletal scintigraphy, outpatient visits, inpatients
34 days, and travel to the treatment centre. The costs for Sr-89 included the costs of its
35 administration. Costs were reported in 1993 Swedish prices.

37 The authors reported that the total additional lifetime cost of Sr-89 treatment were
38 more than offset by cost savings from the postponed external radiotherapy
39 treatments. Reported cost savings were approximately between SEK 3,000-11,000
40 (approximately £200-£800). However, the main limitation with the analysis was that
41 very few details of the methods were reported. Thus it was difficult to determine the
42 quality of the study. In summary, the overall evidence base to support the use of Sr-
43 89 in this setting was considered to be weak.

44 **7.12 Pelvic Targeted Therapies**

45 **7.12.1 Management of Obstructive Uropathy**

46 Prostate cancer may result in unilateral or bilateral obstruction of the ureters resulting
47 in impaired renal function.

1 The development of obstructive uropathy in men with hormone refractory prostate
2 cancer is a frequent, potentially fatal, event.

3 Decompression may allow a return to baseline renal function, palliate symptoms of
4 uraemia and improve quality of life. It may also lead to an earlier discharge from
5 hospital. However it is unlikely to significantly prolong survival, with the average life
6 expectancy of this group of men remaining around 6–12 months.

7 The most common choices for decompression lie between external placement of a
8 nephrostomy tube under local anaesthetic or the internal insertion of a double J stent
9 from the bladder to the kidney under general anaesthetic. Decompression does have
10 an associated complication rate and long term morbidity. Medical intervention such
11 as high-dose steroids have also shown promise.

12 **Recommendations**

- 13 • Upper urinary tract decompression by percutaneous nephrostomy or by
14 insertion of a double J stent should be offered to men with obstructive uropathy
15 secondary to hormone refractory prostate cancer.
- 16 • The option of no intervention should also be discussed openly with men and
17 remains a choice for some.

18 **Qualifying statement:** This recommendation is based on observational evidence of
19 effectiveness and GDG consensus.

20 **Clinical Evidence**

21 Evidence about urinary tract decompression in men with ureteric obstruction and
22 hormone refractory prostate cancer came from case series. Most studies concluded
23 that urinary tract decompression, with nephrostomy or ureteral stents, should be
24 considered (Harris & Speakman 2006; Bordinazzo *et al.* 1994; Chiou *et al.*(1990);
25 Sandhu *et al.* 1992; Fallon *et al.* 1980). Some, however concluded that, despite any
26 survival benefit, urinary tract decompression was usually not appropriate in this group
27 (Dowling *et al.* 1991; Paul *et al.* 1994). There was insufficient evidence about the
28 relative effectiveness of nephrostomy and ureteral stents: no series directly
29 compared different interventions.

30 **Health Economic Evaluation**

31 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
32 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
33 reviewed.

34 **7.12.2 Management of haematuria**

35 Locally advanced prostate cancer can result in haematuria caused by bleeding from
36 the prostatic urethra or base of bladder. Endoscopic control of bleeding points can be
37 performed under general anaesthesia. Palliative radiotherapy to the bladder base
38 and prostate also may be effective.

39

1 **7.12.3 Management of bowel obstruction**

2 Local extension of prostate cancer into the rectum can cause luminal narrowing or
3 complete obstruction. The former can usually be managed by alterations to the diet,
4 the prescription of aperiants and consideration of radiotherapy. Complete obstruction
5 of the lower bowel may require a defunctioning colostomy.

6 **7.13 Palliative Care**

7 The understanding of supportive and palliative care on which this guidance is based
8 originates from work by the National Council for Palliative Care. The
9 recommendations in 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer'
10 (NICE 2004) apply to men with prostate cancer.

11 Palliative Care is: "... the active holistic care of patients with advanced, progressive
12 illness. Management of pain and other symptoms and the provision psychological,
13 social and spiritual support is paramount. The goal of palliative care is achievement
14 of the best quality of life for patients and families." (NICE 2004) Many aspects of
15 palliative care are also applicable earlier in the course of the illness in conjunction
16 with other treatments.

17 **7.13.1 Multidisciplinary needs of men with prostate cancer**

18 The present provision of palliative care to NHS patients involves substantial service
19 provision in the independent and charitable sector as well as service within the NHS.

20 The management of physical symptoms and the psychological needs of men with
21 metastatic prostate cancer needs to draw on the expertise of many clinical
22 disciplines. The day to day management of men with metastatic prostate cancer is
23 the responsibility of the primary care services but in order to achieve optimum care
24 there needs to be close co-operation between primary care, the urology MDT and
25 generic and specialist palliative care staff.

26 The long natural history of prostate cancer means that specialist care may start with
27 the urologist, transfer to the oncologist and end with palliative care. Often there will
28 be overlap between services but the man and his carers and professionals need to
29 be clear which service is in overall control at each stage of the illness

30 The palliative care of these men draws on the expertise of primary care, urological
31 surgeons, orthopaedic surgeons, oncologists, neurosurgeons, neurologists,
32 physicians, experts in pain as well as generic and specialist palliative care providers.

33 **7.13.2 The Dying Patient**

34 Some men will die from their prostate cancer but many will die from other diseases
35 whilst they have prostate cancer. It is important to identify when men are close to
36 death and ensure that symptom relief and palliative care is available to all. This may
37 require generic or specialist palliative care.

38 The effective management of symptoms at the end of life, in all care settings, is
39 supported by the use of appropriate care pathways. The Liverpool Care Pathway for
40 the Dying (http://www.mcpcil.org.uk/liverpool_care_pathway) and the Gold Standards

1 Framework (<http://www.goldstandardsframework.nhs.uk/>) are models that facilitate the
2 quality of care at the end of life.

3 **Recommendations**

- 4 • Men with metastatic prostate cancer should receive tailored information and
5 access to specialist urology and palliative care teams to address their specific
6 needs.
- 7 • The regular assessment of needs (described in the NICE Guidance on
8 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer' (NICE 2004))
9 should be applied systematically to men with prostate cancer.
- 10 • Men with metastatic prostate cancer should be given the opportunity to
11 discuss their therapy and information needs with members of both urology and
12 specialist palliative care teams when there are significant changes in their
13 disease status or symptoms.
- 14 • Palliative interventions at any stage should be integrated into co-ordinated
15 care, and any transitions of care settings should be facilitated as smoothly as
16 possible.
- 17 • Men with prostate cancer, their partners and carers should be consulted as
18 early as possible in respect of their values and preferences for palliative care.
19 Treatment/care plans and preferred place of care should be tailored
20 accordingly.
- 21 • Palliative care should be available when needed and not limited to being
22 available only at end of life. It should not be restricted to being associated with
23 hospice care.

24 **Qualifying statement:** There is evidence from qualitative studies and GDG
25 consensus to support these recommendations.

26 **Clinical Evidence**

27 Literature searches did not find any studies that compared palliative care settings or
28 models in prostate cancer. Several observational studies described experiences with
29 palliative care in particular settings. Although this shows that care is possible in such
30 settings, without comparative studies there was no evidence about which palliative
31 care model or setting was best.

32
33 Several themes emerged: the need for multidisciplinary delivery of palliative care
34 (Palmieri & Waxman 2005; Pienta *et al.* 1996; Cunliffe 2003; Ok *et al.* 2005) and the
35 integration of curative and palliative treatment (Ok *et al.* 2005; Pienta *et al.* 1996)
36 during the often long course of the disease (Green *et al.* 2002).

37 **Health Economic Evaluation**

38 The Guideline Development Group did not rate this topic as a health economic
39 priority; therefore the cost-effectiveness literature on this topic has not been
40 reviewed.

41 **Research Recommendation**

- 42 • Further clinical trials should be conducted to determine if there is a role for
43 bisphosphonates in men with prostate cancer.

1 References

- 2 Atala, A., Amin, M. & Harty, J. I. (1992) Diethylstilbestrol in treatment of
3 postorchietomy vasomotor symptoms and its relationship with serum follicle-
4 stimulating hormone, luteinizing hormone, and testosterone. *Urology*, 39: 108-110.
- 5 Bauman, G., Charette, M., Reid, R. & Sathya, J. (2005) Radiopharmaceuticals for the
6 palliation of painful bone metastases - A systematic review. *Radiotherapy &*
7 *Oncology*, 75: 258.
- 8 Bayley, A., Milosevic, M., Blend, R., Logue, J., Gospodarowicz, M., Boxen, I., Warde,
9 P., McLean, M., Catton, C. & Catton, P. (2001) A prospective study of factors
10 predicting clinically occult spinal cord compression in patients with metastatic
11 prostate carcinoma. *Cancer*, 92: 303-310.
- 12 Brundage, M. D., Crook, J. M. & Lukka, H. (1998) Use of strontium-89 in endocrine-
13 refractory prostate cancer metastatic to bone. Provincial Genitourinary Cancer
14 Disease Site Group. *Cancer Prevention & Control*, 2: 79-87.
- 15 Bordinazzo, R., Benecchi, L., Cazzaniga, A., Vercesi, A. & Privitera, O. (1994)
16 Ureteral obstruction associated with prostate cancer: the outcome after
17 ultrasonographic percutaneous nephrostomy. *Arch Ital.Urol Androl*, 66: 101-106.
- 18 Chiou, R. K., Chang, W. Y. & Horan, J. J. (1990) Ureteral obstruction associated with
19 prostate cancer: the outcome after percutaneous nephrostomy. *Journal of Urology*,
20 143(5): 957-959
- 21 Cunliffe, J. (2003) Reflections on pain management: a case study. *Int J Palliative*
22 *Nursing*, -53.
- 23 de, Leval. J., Boca, P., Yousef, E., Nicolas, H., Jeukenne, M., Seidel, L., Bouffieux,
24 C., Coppens, L., Bonnet, P., Andrienne, R. & Wlatregny, D. (2002) Intermittent
25 versus continuous total androgen blockade in the treatment of patients with
26 advanced hormone-naive prostate cancer: results of a prospective randomized
27 multicenter trial. *Clinical Prostate Cancer*, 1: 163-171.
- 28 Diamond, T. H., Winters, J., Smith, A., De, S. P., Kersley, J. H., Lynch, W. J. &
29 Bryant, C. (2001) The antiosteoporotic efficacy of intravenous pamidronate in men
30 with prostate carcinoma receiving combined androgen blockade: a double blind,
31 randomized, placebo-controlled crossover study. *Nature reviews.Cancer.*, 92: 1444-
32 1450.
- 33 Di Lorenzo, G., Autorino, R., Perdon, S. & De, P. S. (2005) Management of
34 gynaecomastia in patients with prostate cancer: A systematic review. *Lancet*
35 *Oncology*, 6: 972-979.
- 36 Dowling, R. A., Carrasco, C. H. & Babaian, R. J. (1991) Percutaneous urinary
37 diversion in patients with hormone-refractory prostate cancer.[see comment].
38 *Urology*, 37: 89-91.
- 39 Eaton, A. C. & McGuire, N. (1983) Cyproterone acetate in treatment of post-
40 orchidectomy hot flushes. Double-blind cross-over trial. *Lancet*, 2: 1336-1337.
- 41 Fallon, B., Olney, L. & Culp, D. A. (1980) Nephrostomy in cancer patients: To do or
42 not to do? *Br J Urol*, 52: 237-242.
- 43 Figuls, M., Martinez, M. J., onso-Coello, P., Català, E., Garcia, J. L. & Ferrandiz, M.
44 (2003) Radioisotopes for metastatic bone pain [Cochrane review]. *Cochrane*
45 *Database of Systematic Reviews*.

- 1 Finlay, O. G., Mason, M. D. & Shelley, M. (2005) Radioisotopes for the palliation of
2 metastatic bone cancer: a systematic review. *Lancet Oncology*, 6: 392-400.
- 3 Gerber, G. S., Zagaja, G. P., Ray, P. S. & Rukstalis, D. B. (2000) Transdermal
4 estrogen in the treatment of hot flushes in men with prostate cancer. *Urology*, 55: 97-
5 101.
- 6 Green, J. S., Trainer, A. & Hussain, M. (2002) A study of the comparative use of
7 palliative care services by patients with prostate cancer. *J Urol*, 167: 69-70.
- 8 Harris, M. R. & Speakman, M. J. (2006) Nephrostomies in obstructive uropathy; how
9 should hormone resistant prostate cancer patients be managed and can we predict
10 who will benefit? *Prostate Cancer & Prostatic Diseases*, 9: 42-44.
- 11 Langenstroer, P., Kramer, B., Cutting, B., Amling, C., Poulton, T., Lance, R. &
12 Thrasher, J. B. (2005) Parenteral medroxyprogesterone for the management of
13 luteinizing hormone releasing hormone induced hot flashes in men with advanced
14 prostate cancer. *J Urol*, 174: 642-645.
- 15 Loblaw, D. A., Laperriere, N. J. & MacKillop, W. J. (2003) A population-based study
16 of malignant spinal cord compression in Ontario. *Clin Oncol (R Coll.Radiol.)*, 15: 211-
17 217.
- 18 Loprinzi, C. L., Michalak, J. C., Quella, S. K., O'Fallon, J. R., Hatfield, A. K., Nelimark,
19 R. A., Dose, A. M., Fischer, T., Johnson, C. & Klatt, N. E. (1994b) Megestrol acetate
20 for the prevention of hot flashes.[see comment]. *N Engl J Med*, 331: 347-352.
- 21 Magno, C., Anastasi, G., Morabito, N., Gaudio, A., Maisano, D., Franchina, F., Gali,
22 A., Frisina, N. & Melloni, D. (2005) Preventing bone loss during androgen deprivation
23 therapy for prostate cancer: early experience with neridronate. *European Urology*,
24 47: 575-580.
- 25 Malmberg, I., et al., (1997) Painful bone metastases in hormone-refractory prostate
26 cancer: Economic costs of strontium-89 and/or external radiotherapy. *Urology* 50(5):
27 747-753.
- 28 McEwan, A.J., et al. (1994) A retrospective analysis of the cost effectiveness of
29 treatment with Metastron (89Sr-chloride) in patients with prostate cancer metastatic
30 to bone. *Nuclear Medicine Communications* 15(7): 499-504.
- 31 McQuay, H. J., Collins, S. L., Carroll, D. & Moore, R. A. (1999) Radiotherapy for the
32 palliation of painful bone metastases [Cochrane review]. *Cochrane Database of*
33 *Systematic Reviews*.
- 34 National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2004) Improving Supportive and Palliative
35 Care for Adults with Cancer. *NICE cancer service guidance*. London: National
36 Institute for Clinical Excellence.
- 37 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2006) Docetaxel for the
38 treatment of hormone refractory metastatic prostate cancer. NICE technology
39 Appraisal 101. London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence.
- 40 Nelson, J. B., Greenspan, S. L., Resnick, N. M., Trump, D. L. & Parker, R. A. Once
41 weekly oral alendronate prevents bone loss in men on androgen deprivation therapy
42 for prostate cancer. ASCO 2006 Prostate Cancer Symposium , Abstract 139. 2006.
43 18-6-0006.
- 44 Ok, J. H., Meyers, F. J. & Evans, C. P. (2005) Medical and surgical palliative care of
45 patients with urological malignancies. [Review] [48 refs]. *J Urol*, 174: 1177-1182.

- 1 Palmieri, C. & Waxman, J. (2005) Prostate cancer is best managed by
2 multidisciplinary teams. *Pharmacy in Practice*, 15: 398-404.
- 3 Paul, A. B., Love, C. & Chisholm, G. D. (1994) The management of bilateral ureteric
4 obstruction and renal failure in advanced prostate cancer. *Br J Urol*, 74: 642-645.
- 5 Pienta, K. J., Esper, P. S., Naik, H., Parzuchowski, J., Bellefleur, J. & Huber, M. L.
6 (1996) The hospice supportive care program: A new "transitionless" model of
7 palliative care for patients with incurable prostate cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst*, 88: 55-
8 56.
- 9 Prostate Cancer Trialists (2000) Maximum androgen blockade in advanced prostate
10 cancer: an overview of the randomised trials. Prostate Cancer Trialists' Collaborative
11 Group. *Lancet*, 355: 1491-1498.
- 12 Reed, S. D., Radeva, JI et al. (2004). Cost-effectiveness of zoledronic acid for the
13 prevention of skeletal complications in patients with prostate cancer. *Journal of*
14 *Urology* 171(4): 1537-1542.
- 15 Samson, D. J., Seidenfeld, J., Schmitt, B., Hasselblad, V., Albertsen, P. C., Bennett,
16 C. L., Wilt, T. J. & Aronson, N. (2002) Systematic review and meta-analysis of
17 monotherapy compared with combined androgen blockade for patients with
18 advanced prostate carcinoma. *Cancer*, 95: 361-376.
- 19 Sandhu, D. P. S., Mayor, P. E., Sambrook, P. A. & George, N. J. R. (1992) Outcome
20 and prognostic factors in patients with advanced prostate cancer and obstructive
21 uropathy. *Br J Urol*, 70: 412-416.
- 22 Seidenfeld, J., Samson, D. J., Aronson, N., Albertson, P. C., Bayoumi, A. M.,
23 Bennett, C., Brown, A., Garber, A., Gere, M., Hasselblad, V., Wilt, T. & Ziegler, K.
24 (2001) Relative effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of methods of androgen
25 suppression in the treatment of advanced prostate cancer. [Review] [330 refs].
26 *Evidence Report: Technology Assessment (Summary)*, i-x.
- 27 Seidenfeld, J., Samson, D. J., Hasselblad, V., Aronson, N., Albertsen, P. C., Bennett,
28 C. L. & Wilt, T. J. (2000) Single-therapy androgen suppression in men with advanced
29 prostate cancer: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Intern.Med*, 132: 566-
30 577.
- 31 Smith, M. R., Eastham, J., Gleason, D. M., Shasha, D., Tchekmedyan, S. & Zinner,
32 N. (2003) Randomized controlled trial of zoledronic acid to prevent bone loss in men
33 receiving androgen deprivation therapy for nonmetastatic prostate cancer. *The*
34 *Journal of urology.*, 169: 2008-2012.
- 35 Smith, M. R., McGovern, F. J., Zietman, A. L., Fallon, M. A., Hayden, D. L.,
36 Schoenfeld, D. A., Kantoff, P. W. & Finkelstein, J. S. (2001) Pamidronate to prevent
37 bone loss during androgen-deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. *New England*
38 *Journal of Medicine*, 345: 948-955.
- 39 Venkitaraman, R., Sohaib, S. A., Barbachano, Y., Parker, C. C., Khoo, V., Huddart,
40 R. A., Horwich, A. & Dearnaley, D. P. (2007) Detection of Occult Spinal Cord
41 Compression with Magnetic Resonance Imaging of the Spine. *Clin Oncol (R*
42 *Coll.Radiol.)*.
- 43 Yuen, K. K., Shelley, M., Sze, W. M., Wilt, T. & Mason, M. D. (2006)
44 Bisphosphonates for advanced prostate cancer. [Review] [51 refs]. *Cochrane*
45 *Database of Systematic Reviews*, CD006250.

Appendix 1

Prostate Specific Antigen (PSA)

PSA is a protein, expressed by both normal and malignant prostate cells. Serum PSA levels may rise for reasons such as infection or glandular enlargement due to benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) and is therefore not a specific marker for prostate cancer. In addition the levels can fluctuate naturally over time.

The traditional range for normal PSA refers to total PSA levels (tPSA) and anything up to 4ng/ml was considered satisfactory. Above this value a biopsy would be considered. However only around 30% of men will have prostate cancer on biopsy with levels between 4-10 ng/ml (Raaijmakers et al. 2004). Conversely as many as 15% of men with PSA values below 4ng/ml will have cancer, of which some will be clinically significant. As such, a cut-off of 4ng/ml is not ideal and in clinical practice there is no precise single PSA value in isolation at which to recommend a biopsy.

The concept of age adjusted PSA values evolved to allow for the influence of age on PSA, thus reducing the chance of missing a tumour in a younger man whilst avoiding unnecessary investigation in older men. Thus for a man of 70 years a higher upper PSA limit of 6.5 ng/ml would be acceptable whilst for a man of 45 years a PSA value of 2.5 ng/ml may be considered the upper limit of normal. By lowering the PSA cut off in younger men there is a potential risk that the over detection of clinically insignificant cancers may increase.

Refinements of the traditional PSA test, measuring tPSA have been employed to increase specificity, including the measurement of free/total PSA ratio (f/tPSA) or of complexed PSA (cPSA). These are of most value in the PSA range 2-10ng/ml and might reduce the number of unnecessary biopsies. In addition, f/tPSA ratio may offer prognostic information - those men with lower ratio potentially harbouring a more aggressive disease.

The concept of 'PSA kinetics' is not new but worthy of note. PSA velocity (PSA-V) refers to the absolute rate of PSA change over time. Recent evidence has indicated that PSA-V may need to take into account both age and individual PSA value to optimise interpretation. In clinical practice, a minimum of three values is required over at least 18 months for a meaningful assessment. It may offer prognostic information as to how an individual prostate cancer may behave after diagnosis with a rise in over 2ng/ml in the year prior to diagnosis predicting a more aggressive disease course or higher post-therapy relapse rate (D'Amico et al. 2005). PSA doubling time (PSADT) refers to the time taken for a serum PSA value to double and is also emerging as useful pre-treatment marker of a prostate tumour's biological potential (Klotz 2005). A calculated PSADT of less than 3 years may indicate a more aggressive tumour course.

References

D'Amico AV, Renshaaw AA, Sussman B, Chen MH (2005) Pre-treatment PSA velocity and the risk of death from prostate cancer following external beam radiotherapy. *N Eng J Med* 294: 440 – 7

- 1 Klotz L (2005) Active surveillance with selective delayed intervention using PSA
- 2 doubling time for good risk prostate cancer. *Eur Urol* 47: 16 - 21
- 3 Raaijmakers R, Wildhagen MF Ito K et al. (2004) Prostate-specific antigen change in
- 4 the European Randomized Study of Screening for Prostate Cancer, section
- 5 Rotterdam. *Urology* 63: 316 -20
- 6

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

Appendix 2

TNM Staging for Prostate Cancer^{§§§§}

STAGE	SUB-STAGE	DEFINITION
T1		Clinically unapparent tumour, not detected by digital rectal examination nor visible by imaging
	T1a	Incidental histological finding; ≤5% of tissue resected during TURP
	T1b	Incidental histological finding; >5% of tissue resected during TURP
	T1c	Tumour identified by needle biopsy
T2		Confined within the prostate
	T2a	Tumour involves half of the lobe or less
	T2b	Tumour involves more than one half of one lobe but not both lobes
	T2c	Tumour involves both lobes
T3		Tumour extends through the prostate capsule but has not spread to other organs
	T3a	Extracapsular extension (unilateral or bilateral)
	T3b	Tumour invades seminal vesicle(s)
T4		Tumour is fixed or invades adjacent structures other than seminal vesicles
	T4a	Tumour invades bladder neck and/or external sphincter and/or rectum
	T4b	Tumour invades levator muscles and/or is fixed to pelvic wall

^{§§§§} Sobin LH, Wittekind CH, editors (2002) *TNM classification of malignant tumours* 6th edition. New York: Wiley-Liss

STAGE	SUB-STAGE	DEFINITION
Node		Regional lymph nodes
	NX	Regional lymph nodes can not be assessed
	N0	No regional lymph nodes metastasis
	N1	Regional lymph node metastasis

1

STAGE	SUB-STAGE	DEFINITION
Metastasis		Systemic spread
	MX	Distant metastasis can not be assessed
	M0	No distant metastasis
	M1a	Non-regional lymph node(s)
	M1b	Bone(s)
	M1c	Metastasis at other site(s)

2

Appendix 3

An Economic Evaluation of Radical Prostatectomy Versus Alternative Treatment Options for Clinically Localised Prostate Cancer

Introduction

The aim of this study was to assess the cost-effectiveness of a number of different treatment options for clinically localised prostate cancer.

Existing Economic Evidence

The published economic literature relating to the choice of treatment strategy for men with clinically localised prostate cancer is extremely sparse. The systematic literature review identified 4 relevant studies. One of these studies (Horwitz et al. 1999) compared 3D conformal radiation therapy with conventional techniques, in a US setting, but was only available as an abstract. The most recent study, by Konski et al. 2006, was also performed in a US setting, and compared 3D conformal radiotherapy with intensity modulated radiotherapy (IMRT). The main limitation with this study was that differences in treatment effect were estimated using non-randomised studies, and few details of the literature search used to identify the non-randomised studies were provided. That is, people receiving IMRT were assumed to have a 2% lower probability of biochemical failure each year compared to people receiving 3D conformal radiotherapy, but the evidence base to support this notion is weak. The remaining two studies were both performed in the UK (Hummel et al. 2003; Calvert et al. 2003). Hummel et al. (2003) assessed the costs and effects of a number of different treatment options, including active surveillance and radical prostatectomy, from an NHS cost perspective. However, a core assumption within the analysis was that the treatment options did not differ in terms of slowing the progression of the underlying prostate cancer. Differences in treatment effect were therefore only estimated in terms of expected side-effect profiles, although none of the evidence was derived from randomised trials. While the baseline estimates suggested brachytherapy was cost-effective compared to active surveillance and radical prostatectomy, the authors concluded that this finding was not robust given the significant uncertainty surrounding the relative side-effects of brachytherapy (and other treatments).

The economic evaluation by Calvert et al. (2003) compared policies of watchful waiting with radical prostatectomy in 60-year-old men with Gleason scores of 5-7^{*****}. Costs were considered from a National Health Services (NHS) perspective and survival was adjusted for changes in health-related quality-of-life in terms of the underlying prostate cancer and adverse effects of treatment such as incontinence and impotence. The results of the analysis suggested that watchful waiting was less costly and more effective than radical prostatectomy (that is, it produced more Quality-Adjusted Life-years [QALYs]). However, it should be noted the number of QALYs gained per patient was almost equivalent suggesting that gains in survival attributable to radical prostatectomy were more than offset by increases in the incidence of post-operative complications.

***** Calvert et al. (2003) did include a third treatment option, a selection-based management option using DNA-ploidy as a marker of disease progression. However, as this option was considered to be experimental, it is not expanded upon in this paper.

1
2 In terms of developing the understanding of the cost-effectiveness of the treatment
3 options for men with localised prostate cancer, there are arguably two main
4 limitations with the existing literature. Firstly, only the evaluation by Hummel et al.
5 (2003) attempted to assess the cost-effectiveness of more than two treatment
6 options. Secondly, none of the studies incorporates information from the more
7 recently published RCT that compares radical prostatectomy versus watchful waiting
8 (Bill-Axelsson et al. 2005).

9 **Aims**

10 The primary aim of this study was to perform an economic evaluation of watchful
11 waiting versus radical prostatectomy using the 10 year RCT published by Bill-
12 Axelsson et al. (2005). In the absence of suitable RCT data, a secondary objective
13 was to estimate how effective other therapies (brachytherapy, standard external
14 beam radiotherapy, intensity modulated radiotherapy, HIFU and cryotherapy) would
15 need to be in order to be considered cost-effective compared by conducting a
16 threshold analysis on the number of additional QALYs that were required to achieve
17 certain willingness to pay thresholds for a gain value of one additional QALY.

18 **Method**

19 The economic evaluation was based on a Markov model and performed from a NHS
20 cost perspective. Markov models divide a patients' possible prognosis into a series of
21 discrete health states. Costs and benefits are assigned to each health state and
22 transition probabilities define the movement (as a consequence of disease
23 progression and treatment) of an individual between these health states over a
24 particular time frame (cycle length). The costs and benefits of comparative
25 treatments are then estimated on the basis of the length of time individuals spend in
26 each health state.

27
28 The original and preferred model structure was to base the economic evaluation on a
29 three-state Markov model (clinically localised disease, metastatic disease and dead),
30 in line with Calvert et al. (2003) However, the RCT evidence published in Bill-Axelsson
31 et al. (2005) did not allow an estimate to be made of the probability of death given
32 metastatic disease. Therefore, a Markov model with only two health states was
33 constructed; alive and dead. The possibility of patients' progressing from clinically
34 localised disease to metastatic disease was contained within the health state 'alive'.
35 This approach represents a mathematical means of staying true to the observed trial
36 (Bill-Axelsson et al. 2005) while at the same time allowing for disease progression in
37 terms of developing more advanced prostate cancer. An alternative approach would
38 have been to use the three-state Markov model as described above, using estimates
39 of the probability of death given metastatic disease from alternative published
40 sources. However, as the RCT was considered to represent the highest quality data
41 source, this approach was considered to be less appropriate.

42
43 The model's cycle length was yearly, and the time horizon for the analysis was 20-
44 years, by which time, the overwhelming majority of hypothetical patients had died. In
45 the base case (the scenario which was considered to be the most likely given all the
46 available evidence and necessary assumptions), hypothetical patients were assumed
47 to have a mean age of 65 years and a modal Gleason score of 5-6, in line with Bill-
48 Axelsson et al. (2005).

49

1 Each cycle, patients allocated to receive watchful waiting or radical prostatectomy
2 had an annual probability of 1) continuing to have localised disease / be cured 2)
3 developing metastatic disease, 3) dying from natural causes or 4) dying from prostate
4 cancer. All patients who developed metastatic disease were assumed to receive
5 hormonal treatment until death. Patients who were allocated to receive radical
6 prostatectomy were assumed to receive surgery on entry to the model. All patients
7 were assumed to receive two PSA tests per year on an outpatient basis until death.

8
9 Three baseline results were generated:

- 10 • Cost per additional life-year gained
- 11 • Cost per QALY gained (side-effects excluded)
- 12 • Cost per QALY gained (side-effects included)⁺⁺⁺⁺

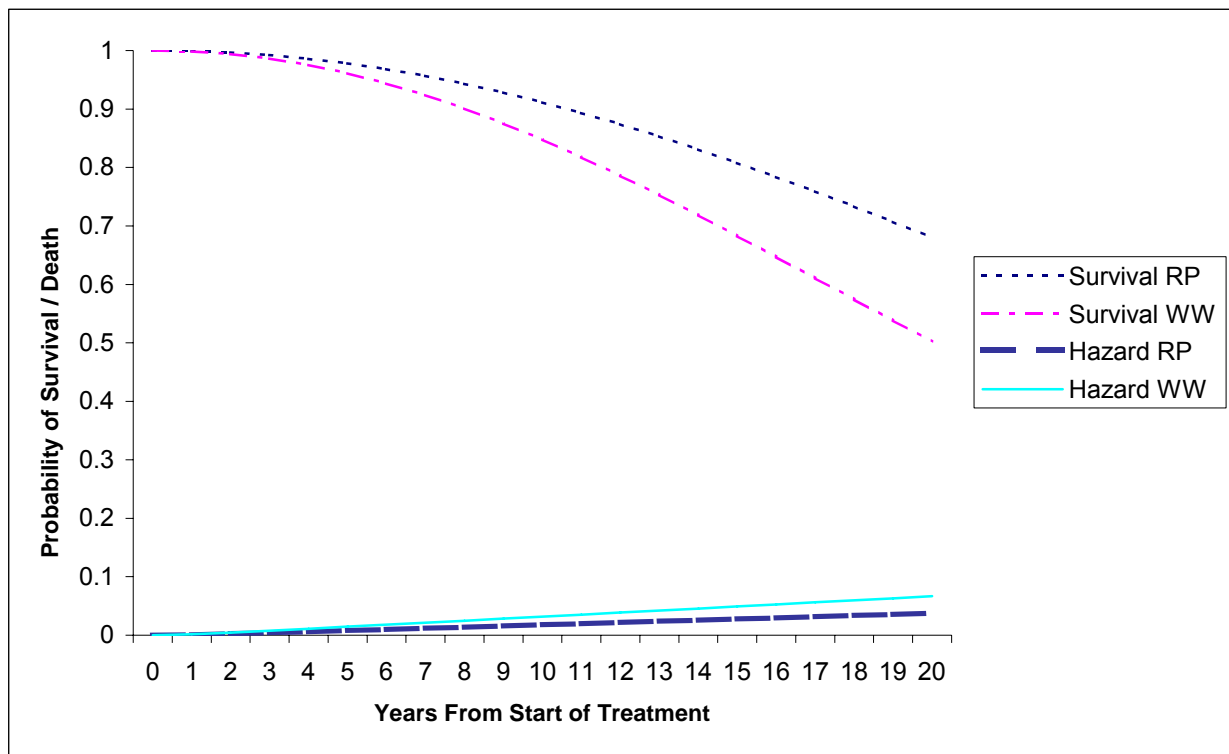
13 **Transition Probabilities and Treatment Effects**

14 The baseline annual probability of death from prostate cancer for the watchful waiting
15 strategy was taken from Bill-Axelsson et al. (2005). Standard regression techniques
16 were used to estimate a Weibull function⁺⁺⁺⁺ from the published 10-year Kaplan-
17 Meier disease-specific survival curve (Figure 1). To this was added the annual
18 probability of death from other causes, taken directly from the UK Government's
19 Actuarial Department (http://www.gad.gov.uk/Life_Tables/eoltable.htm). The annual
20 probability of developing metastatic disease was also estimated from Bill-Axelsson et
21 al. (2005) by again fitting a Weibull function. However, as a consequence of using a
22 two rather than three-state model, the probability of developing metastatic disease
23 was assumed to be cumulative, and as such, represented at any single point in time,
24 the proportion of patients who were in the health state 'alive' but living with metastatic
25 disease.

⁺⁺⁺⁺ The latter scenario was taken to represent the main baseline result.

⁺⁺⁺⁺ A Weibull function is a mathematical method used to estimate the probability of an event happening over time given the observed data. In this instance, it has been used to estimate the probability of death each year.

1 **Figure 1: Reported and extrapolated disease-specific survival curves and hazard functions**
 2 **derived from Bill-Axelson et al. (2005)**



3
 4 RP, Radical Prostatectomy; WW, Watchful Waiting
 5 The survival curves are analogous to Kaplan-Meier survival curves. However, the hazard functions
 6 relate to the annual probability of death, which increases with increasing time. In both instances, the
 7 first 10-years relate to the observed data, whereas years 11-20 relate to the extrapolation
 8
 9 The effectiveness of radical prostatectomy was modelled by adjusting the baseline
 10 probabilities of death from prostate cancer and metastatic disease by the associated
 11 relative risks, as published in Bill-Axelson et al. (2005) 0.56 (95%CI 0.36-0.88)
 12 (Figure 1) and 0.6 (95%CI 0.42-0.86) respectively.

13
 14 A number of side effects are possible as a result of treatment for prostate cancer.
 15 Indeed, the choice of treatment is often based on the anticipated side-effect profiles
 16 given the presenting patient, and is therefore an important concern.

17
 18 In an ideal scenario, the disutility (reduction in health-related quality-of-life)
 19 associated with side effects would be derived from randomised studies comparing
 20 the relevant treatment options using an appropriate utility-based instrument. A next
 21 best solution would be to calculate the proportion of patients in each arm of a RCT
 22 that experienced each side effect and to estimate the overall level of disutility by
 23 linking this information to relevant published utility weights.

24
 25 In the context of this modelling exercise, Bill-Axelson et al. (2005) did report a
 26 selection of side-effects for both the watchful waiting and radical prostatectomy arms.
 27 However, utilities were not measured within the trial and specific utility weights were
 28 not available for the majority of the reported outcomes (e.g. pain during intercourse).

29
 30 The main quality of life conclusions from the RCT were published by Steineck et al.
 31 (over 4 rather than the full 10 years). The authors concluded that erectile dysfunction
 32 (80% versus 45%) and urinary leakage (49% versus 21%) were more common in the
 33 radical prostatectomy treatment arm whereas urinary obstruction was more common

1 in the watchful waiting arm (44% versus 28%). Levels of bowel function, anxiety,
 2 depression and well being were all reported as being similar across the trial arms.
 3 Therefore the following and only assumptions were included in the model with
 4 respect to reductions in health related quality-of-life as a result of side-effects: 35%
 5 more people receiving radical prostatectomy experienced erectile dysfunction and
 6 28% more people experienced urinary leakage compared to watchful waiting. It was
 7 also assumed that 16% more people in the watchful waiting arm experienced urinary
 8 obstruction compared to those receiving radical prostatectomy. In the main baseline
 9 scenario, the side effects were assumed to occur at the beginning of the model and
 10 to be permanent. Sensitivity analysis was used to test the robustness of the results to
 11 these and other assumptions.

12 **Health-Related Quality-of-Life (HRQoL) / Utility weights**

13 The systematic literature review revealed that there have been a reasonable number
 14 of HRQoL studies involving men with prostate cancer. However, relatively few have
 15 reported utilities, which are required to incorporate HRQoL into economic evaluations
 16 in order to estimate Quality-Adjusted Life-Years (QALYs). Therefore, it was assumed
 17 that men aged 65 years with localised disease had levels of health equivalent to the
 18 general population. Using the UK EQ-5D dataset, this is equivalent to a utility^{§§§§§}
 19 value of 0.78^{*****}. The utility value associated with metastatic disease was taken from
 20 Cowen et al. (1999) as 0.42 [6]. Cowen et al. (1999) also reported a number of utility
 21 scores with respect to treatment-related side-effects for localised prostate cancer; a
 22 mean of 0.69 for impotence (taken herein to be equivalent to sexual dysfunction) and
 23 0.57 for incontinence (taken herein to represent both urinary obstruction and
 24 leakage)^{†††††}.

25
 26 Further simplifying assumptions were required to operationalise the model with
 27 respect to incorporating reductions in health-related quality-of-life as a consequence
 28 of side effects. Specifically, a disutility weight was calculated for the three possible
 29 side effects by subtracting the side-effect specific utility from the utility value for
 30 localised disease:

31
 32 Disutility for impotence = $0.78 - 0.69 = 0.09$

33 Disutility for urinary obstruction / leakage = $0.78 - 0.57 = 0.21$

34

35 The disutility weights were also assumed to be additive, meaning for example, that a
 36 person with localised disease, with impotence and urinary obstruction experienced a
 37 utility of 0.48 ($0.78 - 0.09 - 0.21$). Whereas, for a person with metastatic disease with
 38 impotence but no urinary obstruction, the utility value was 0.33 ($0.42 - 0.09$).

39 **Costs**

40 Costs were only considered from a National Health Service's perspective. The costs
 41 of treatment and PSA testing were taken from published sources, mostly Hummel et
 42 al. (2003), Calvert et al. (2003) and the NHS Cost Index (Table 1). The costs of
 43 complications associated with treatments for localised prostate cancer have not been
 44 well documented, therefore the following assumptions were made. For urinary
 45 obstruction, all patients were assumed to receive a transurethral resection of the

§§§§§ Utility values of 0 and 1 are taken to equal death and perfect health respectively. States of health between death and perfect health are therefore taken to have utility values somewhere between these two points.

***** A number of utility values representing clinically localised prostate cancer were available, however, they were not adjudged to differ significantly from 0.78 and were not always UK specific.

††††† Cowen et al. (1999) derived these values in 31 individuals using the time-trade off method.

1 prostate (TURP). An annual cost of treating incontinence was also included, although
 2 it is noted that the study from which this value was taken relates to men with severe
 3 urinary storage problems and was not prostate-cancer specific; no published costs
 4 for urinary problems in men with prostate cancer could be identified.

5

6 **Table 1: Unit cost estimates**

Cost	Estimate	Source
Radical Prostatectomy	£5603	Calvert et al. (2003)
Hormonal Treatment (annual)	£2612	Hummel et al. (2003)
Transurethral Resection (elective)	£2009	NHS Unit Costs ^a
Urinary Incontinence	£115 (per annum)	Turner et al. ^b
Twice yearly PSA test	£154	Calvert et al.(2003)
External Beam Radiotherapy (30 fractions)	£3600	NHS Unit Costs (@ £120 per fraction)
Two Phase Intensity Modulated Radiotherapy	£10000	Assumption
Brachytherapy	£6304	Hummel et al. (2003)
Cryotherapy	£7942	Hummel et al. (2003)]
HIFU	£12800	www.hifucancertreatment.co.uk

7 ^aOne-off cost8 ^bThese costs relate to UK individuals with 'significant urinary storage problems', and are not prostate-
9 cancer specific.

10

11 Where necessary, costs were inflated to 2006 prices using the Hospital and
12 Community Health Services (HCHS) Pay and Prices Index.13 **Discounting**14 In the base case analysis, costs and health outcomes were both discounted at 3.5%
15 per annum in line with NICE recommendations (NICE 2004).16 **Sensitivity Analysis**17 A number of one-way sensitivity analyses (where one input variable is changed, the
18 model re-run and a revised ICER calculated) were undertaken to highlight the
19 variables that were the most important in terms of determining the cost-effectiveness
20 of treatment.

21

22 Threshold analysis was also undertaken to determine how effective, in terms of
23 additional QALYs, other therapies (brachytherapy, standard external beam
24 radiotherapy, intensity modulated radiotherapy, HIFU and cryotherapy) would need to
25 be, to be considered cost-effective compared to watchful waiting. Threshold analysis
26 is undertaken by fixing the threshold willingness to pay for an extra unit of health
27 outcome, and determining the size of health benefit survival required to produce an
28 incremental cost-effectiveness ratio (ICER) equal to this willingness to pay
29 value⁺⁺⁺⁺⁺. NICE does not have an absolute level indicating cost-effectiveness.
30 However, NICE's method document suggests that technologies with ICERs above
31 £30,000 per additional QALY are unlikely to be considered cost-effective in the
32 absence of 'robust' evidence (NICE 2007). Therefore, £30,000 per additional QALY
33 was taken to represent the threshold willingness to pay.

+++++ An incremental cost-effectiveness ratio (ICER) is calculated by dividing the difference in health benefits (in this instance, additional life-years or QALYs) between the different treatment options, into the difference in costs.

1

2 Results

3 The baseline results are shown in Table 2. The results show that radical
4 prostatectomy costs approximately £4400 more than watchful waiting, but that radical
5 prostatectomy produces an average discounted increase in life expectancy of 0.5
6 years. This is equivalent to an ICER of approximately £9000 per life-year gained.
7 When no post-operative complications were assumed, radical prostatectomy was
8 also associated with approximately 0.5 extra QALYs, with an associated ICER of
9 £7918. However, when treatment related side effects were assumed to occur, as
10 described in the methods section, radical prostatectomy was 'dominated' by watchful
11 waiting (the main baseline result). That is, radical prostatectomy was more costly and
12 less effective than watchful waiting.

13 **Table 2: Baseline incremental cost-effectiveness ratios**

	Cost	LY	QALYs¹	QALYs²
WW	£6185	9.69	6.96	6.63
RP	£10619	10.19	7.52	6.36
ICER		£8868	£7918	Dominated

14 RP, Radical Prostatectomy; WW, Watchful Waiting; ICER, incremental cost-effectiveness ratio
15 In QALYs¹, there is 0 probability of complications following treatment whereas in QALYs², the
16 additional probabilities of urinary obstruction, urinary leakage and impotence are assumed.
17 **The figure in bold represents the main baseline result. In this instance, RP is more costly and**
18 **less effective than WW, thus it is 'dominated'.**

19 Sensitivity Analysis

20 Sensitivity analysis was performed with respect to the scenario that assumed the
21 possibility of side effects (i.e. the main baseline result). Analysis showed that the
22 baseline ICER was not sensitive to changes regarding, the costs of watchful waiting
23 or the costs of metastatic disease. However, the ICER was found to be extremely
24 sensitive to differing assumptions regarding the possible side effects associated with
25 radical prostatectomy and watchful waiting. For example, when the additional
26 proportion of people undergoing watchful waiting who experienced urinary
27 obstruction was assumed to increase to 40% (from 16%), the ICER was found to be
28 £20,155 per QALY if radical prostatectomy was used instead of watchful waiting.
29 Thus, radical prostatectomy under this assumption appears to be a lot more cost-
30 effective than under the baseline assumptions. The ICER was similarly sensitive to
31 the probability of urinary leakage. For example, when the probability of urinary
32 leakage following radical prostatectomy was assumed to be 9%, the ICER equalled
33 £30,000 per additional QALY. However, because the disutility associated with
34 impotence was relatively small (0.09) compared to the disutility associated with
35 urinary problems (both 0.21), the baseline results were not so sensitive to the
36 probability of people becoming impotent post-surgery.

37
38 The side effect data from the Bill-Axelsson et al. (2005) are only published in detail
39 after a mean follow-up period of 4-years. When it was assumed that all treatment
40 related side effects resolved after 4 years, the main baseline ICER was £33,926 if
41 radical prostatectomy was used instead of watchful waiting.

42
43 One-way sensitivity analysis also showed that the baseline ICERs were relatively
44 sensitive to the cost of radical prostatectomy. However, only when the cost reduced
45 to under £1000 per patient (equivalent to 18% of its original costs), was it judged to
46 be cost-effective compared to watchful waiting at the £30,000 per QALY gained level.

1
2 The baseline model did not include the possibility of patients developing hormone-
3 refractory prostate cancer. However, as a proxy, a threshold analysis was
4 undertaken to demonstrate how costly treatment for hormone-refractory prostate
5 cancer would need to be for radical prostatectomy to be cost-effective (at the
6 £30,000 per QALY gained level) compared to watchful waiting. This value was found
7 to be approximately £30,000 per year. Considering the costs quoted in a recent
8 NICE Assessment Report for using docetaxel in combination with a steroid, a cost of
9 £30,000 per year is highly unlikely
10 (<http://guidance.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=285230>).

11
12 The baseline ICER was shown to be sensitive to the relative risk of survival.
13 However, only when the relative risk was reduced to approximately 0.04 (from 0.56),
14 was radical prostatectomy cost-effective at the £30,000 per QALY gained level.
15 Given the lower 95% confidence interval reported by Bill-Axelsson et al. (2005) of
16 0.36, this scenario is considered to be unlikely.

17
18 No sub-group specific relative risk of survival was reported by Bill-Axelsson et al.
19 (2005) for people with more advanced disease (higher Gleason scores), as it was not
20 found to be a significant predictor of disease-specific mortality. However, disease-
21 specific mortality was shown to differ by age. One-way sensitivity analysis showed
22 that expected costs and QALYs for the two different treatment options differed
23 markedly when different starting ages were assumed. However, in all instances,
24 radical prostatectomy remained the dominated option.

25
26 In the absence of suitable RCT data, an estimate was made of the relative risk of
27 disease-related survival that would be required for men with Gleason scores above 6.
28 This was attempted by assuming men with Gleason scores above 6 had double the
29 baseline risk of cancer related death compared with those enrolled in the Bill-Axelsson
30 RCT (Bill-Axelsson et al. 2005). To achieve a threshold willingness-to-pay per QALY
31 gained of £30,000, a relative risk of approximately 0.4 was required. When the
32 baseline risk was quadrupled, this relative risk increased to approximately 0.59,
33 which is above the original baseline relative risk as reported by Bill-Axelsson et al.
34 (2005).

35
36 Threshold analysis was also conducted in order to calculate how many QALYs the
37 various other therapies (brachytherapy, standard external beam radiotherapy,
38 intensity modulated radiotherapy, HIFU and cryotherapy) would need to produce in
39 order to be cost-effective^{§§§§§§}.

40
41 The original intention was to perform this analysis in relation to the expected costs
42 and QALYs of treating men with radical prostatectomy. However, since in the main
43 baseline result, radical prostatectomy was dominated by watchful waiting, this would
44 have been nonsensical, as it is not considered to be an economically relevant option
45 in the first instance. Therefore, threshold QALYs were calculated in relation to
46 watchful waiting (using a threshold willingness-to-pay of £30,000 per additional
47 QALY).

48

§§§§§§ The main assumption underpinning this analysis is that these treatments have been assumed to be equally effective as radical prostatectomy in terms of slowing the progression of the underlying cancer. Thus, any results are contingent on this assumption.

1 The results from the threshold analysis showed that relatively modest gains in
 2 QALYs are required over 20 years if any of the listed treatments are to be considered
 3 cost-effective (Table 3). For example, external beam radiotherapy cost an additional
 4 £2431 than watchful waiting (£8616 - £6185), meaning that 0.08 QALYs are required
 5 to make it cost-effective compared to watchful waiting, over a 20 year period. For
 6 HIFU, the most costly option at £17816, the equivalent value was 0.39 QALYs, or an
 7 additional 4.3 months of perfect health over 20 years.

8 **Table 3: Results from the threshold analysis over a 20 year period compared to watchful**
 9 **waiting.**

Treatment	Expected Cost of Treatment	Required QALY Increase ^a	Equivalent Health Gain In Months ^b
External beam	£8618	0.08	1
Brachytherapy	£11320	0.17	2
Cryotherapy	£12958	0.23	2.8
I	£15016	0.29	3.5
HIFU	£17816	0.36	4.3

10 ^aRequired to achieve a cost per QALY gained of £30,000 compared with Watchful Waiting.

11 ^bFor example, external beam radiotherapy would have to produce 1 extra month of perfect health over
 12 a 20 year period compared to watchful waiting for it to be considered cost-effective, which is itself
 13 equivalent to 0.08 QALYs.

14 Discussion

15 The primary aim of this study was to perform an economic evaluation of watchful
 16 waiting versus radical prostatectomy using the 10 year RCT published by Bill-
 17 Axelson et al. (2005) (in men with Gleason scores of 5-6). The results suggest that
 18 the cost-effectiveness of radical prostatectomy is highly dependent on the choice of
 19 health outcomes included in the analysis. If only patient survival is considered, then
 20 radical prostatectomy is arguably cost-effective. However, when quality-of-life
 21 considerations with respect to both the underlying prostate cancer and treatment-
 22 related side effects are included, watchful waiting becomes the dominant option.
 23 These results are in line with conclusions drawn by Calvert et al. (2003) The
 24 sensitivity analysis, however, showed that the results were not robust to certain
 25 assumptions, specifically surrounding the health-related effects and treatment-related
 26 side-effects; a conclusion also drawn by Hummel et al. (2003). Importantly, the
 27 results suggest that the cost-effectiveness of radical prostatectomy (and all
 28 treatments for that matter) is more dependent on the side-effect profiles than the
 29 relative risk of disease progression. Therefore, in order to be able to draw firmer
 30 conclusions regarding the cost-effectiveness of radical prostatectomy, more needs to
 31 be known about the relative probabilities of the side-effects, their duration and impact
 32 on health-related quality-of-life (it is anticipated that the ongoing MAPS study will
 33 provide more information in these issues
 34 <https://www.chartrials.abdn.ac.uk/maps/faq.php> as will the ProtecT study
 35 <http://www.hta.nhsweb.nhs.uk/project/1230.asp>).

36 In the absence of RCT data, threshold analyses were undertaken to calculate how
 37 effective many additional QALYs other therapies (brachytherapy, standard external
 38 beam radiotherapy, intensity modulated radiotherapy, HIFU and cryotherapy) would
 39 need to produce in order to be cost-effective at the £30,000 per additional QALY
 40 level. Radical prostatectomy was ruled out as an option, therefore these QALY gains
 41 were calculated with respect to watchful waiting. The results suggest that relatively
 42 modest improvements are required for these treatments to be cost-effective. For
 43
 44

1 example, external beam radiotherapy only needed to generate an extra 0.08 QALYs
2 over a 20 year period compared to watchful waiting for it to be considered cost-
3 effective. This is equivalent to approximately one extra month of perfect health. For
4 HIFU, the most costly option, the equivalent figure was 4.3 months. Thus while the
5 absence of randomised controlled trials prevents a robust economic evaluation of
6 these 'newer' treatments, it is possible to conclude that the scope for them to cost-
7 effectiveness is relatively large. Indeed, it is feasible that they could be cost-effective
8 even if it is proved that their greatest impact is on improving the side effects more
9 commonly associated with the 'older' treatments. In the mean time, decision-makers
10 will need to judge how likely it is that these QALY gains will be realised.

11
12 There are a number of limitations with this economic evaluation. Firstly, the cost-
13 effectiveness of active surveillance has not been estimated. This is partly because
14 active surveillance has not been subject to a RCT but also because modelling its
15 cost-effectiveness would require a much more complicated model. Assuming that
16 PSA testing is the favoured method of monitoring for progressive disease, PSA levels
17 would themselves need to be modelled, pre and post treatment, rather than cancer
18 stages as has been performed herein. However, the relative effect of treatment on
19 PSA would still be uncertain given the absence of RCT data. Therefore, even if it
20 could be concluded that radical prostatectomy is cost-effective compared with
21 watchful waiting, it is unclear whether it is cost-effective compared with a policy of
22 active surveillance. Similarly, it is also unclear how cost-effective watchful waiting
23 would be compared to active surveillance. Ultimately, however, the cost-
24 effectiveness of active surveillance is likely to depend on a combination of the
25 proportion of patients who develop progressive disease, the ability to accurately
26 detect progressive disease and treatment efficacy in patients with progressive
27 disease.

28
29 A second limitation was that a robust sub-group analysis was not performed for men
30 with differing Gleason scores. This is typically performed using a sub-group specific
31 relative risk of disease progression derived from RCTs and using a sub-group
32 specific relative risk of death. However, this information was not available, and
33 indeed was reported by Bill Axelson et al. (2005) not to be statistically significant at
34 the 5% level in a pre-planned sub-group analysis. However, as an indicator to cost-
35 effectiveness, the baseline risks of death were doubled and quadrupled for men with
36 Gleason scores of >6, in order to ascertain how effective treatment should be in
37 terms of preventing deaths in order to be cost-effective. The results showed that
38 when the baseline risk of prostate-specific death was quadrupled, and a relative risk
39 akin to the value reported by Bill-Axelson et al. (2005) was assumed, radical
40 prostatectomy was cost-effective at the £30,000 per QALY gained level. However, it
41 is unclear how plausible a relative risk estimate this is in the absence of RCT data in
42 this patient group.

43
44 The major conclusion that can be drawn from this evaluation is that the cost-
45 effectiveness of all the modelled treatment options for men with clinically localised
46 prostate cancer is highly dependent on the side effects (and therefore reductions in
47 health-related quality-of-life) associated with each of the treatments. Indeed, the
48 baseline assumptions suggest that radical prostatectomy should not be an option for
49 people with Gleason scores of <6 because of its associated post-operative
50 complications. However, different assumptions regarding side effect profiles
51 dramatically altered the findings. Thus, future studies that attempt to quantify these

1 relative side-effect profiles would help to produce more accurate estimates of cost-
2 effectiveness.

3

4 **References**

5 Bill-Axelson, A., et al. (2005) Radical prostatectomy versus watchful waiting in early
6 prostate cancer. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 352(19): 1977-1984.

7 Calvert, N.W., et al. (2003) Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of prognostic
8 markers in prostate cancer. *British Journal of Cancer* 88(1): 31-35.

9 Cowen, M.E., et al., (1999) *The value or utility of prostate cancer states*. *Journal of*
10 *Urology* 155: 376.

11 Horwitz, E.M. and A.L. Hanlon, *The cost effectiveness of 3D conformal radiation*
12 *therapy compared with conventional techniques for patients with clinically localized*
13 *prostate cancer*. *International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics* 1999.
14 45(5): p. 1219-1125.

15 Hummel, S., et al., *Clinical and cost-effectiveness of new and emerging technologies*
16 *for early localised prostate cancer: A systematic review*. *Health Technology*
17 *Assessment* 2003. 7(33).

18 Konski A et al. (2006) Using decision analysis to determine the cost-effectiveness of
19 intensity-modulated radiation therapy in the treatment of intermediate risk prostate
20 cancer. *International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics* 66(2): 408-
21 415.

22 National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2004) *Guidance for manufacturers and*
23 *sponsors*. London: National Institute for Clinical Excellence.

24 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2007). *The guidelines manual*.
25 London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence.

26

27

Appendix 4

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40

Abbreviations

ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone
BPH	benign prostatic hyperplasia
CAB	combined androgen blockade
CNS	clinical nurse specialist
CT	Computed Tomography
DH	Department of Health
DRE	digital rectal examination
EBRT	external beam radiotherapy
GDG	guideline development group
GI	gastrointestinal
HIFU	high intensity focussed ultrasound
HRPC	hormone refractory prostate cancer
HRQoL	health related quality of life
ICER	incremental cost effectiveness ratio
IMRT	intensity modulated radiotherapy
LHRHa	luteinising hormone-releasing hormone agonists
MDT	Multi-disciplinary team
MRI	Magnetic Resonance Imaging
MRS	Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy
NCC-C	National Collaborating Centre for Cancer
NCRI	National Cancer Research Institute
NCRN	National Cancer Research Network
NICE	National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
PCPT	Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial
PCRMP	Prostate Cancer Risk Management Programme
PDE5	phosphodiesterase type 5
PET	positron emission tomography
PME	pelvic floor muscle exercise
PSA	prostate specific antigen
PSA-DT	prostate specific antigen doubling time
QALY	quality adjusted life years
RCT	randomised controlled trial
SRE	skeletal related event
SSRI	Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitor
TRUS	trans-rectal ultrasound
TURP	trans-urethral resection of the prostate

Appendix 5

Glossary

Active surveillance: a method of managing low or intermediate-risk prostate cancer that aims to target radical treatment only to those cases that need it.

Adjuvant treatment: treatment given in addition to the main treatment.

Androgen withdrawal therapy: treatment that works by lowering testosterone levels. This can be achieved either by bilateral orchidectomy or with LHRH agonists.

Anti-androgen drugs: drugs that act by binding to and blocking the hormone receptors of cancer cells, thereby preventing androgens from stimulating the cancer.

Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia (BPH): a non-cancerous condition in which an overgrowth of prostate tissue pushes against the urethra in some men, restricting the flow of urine. Also known as benign prostatic hypertrophy.

Biopsy: removal of a sample of tissue from the body to assist in diagnosis of a disease.

Bone scan: a scan intended to show any abnormal areas of bone.

Bowel toxicity: symptoms caused by treatment-related damage to the bowel.

Brachytherapy: is a form of radiotherapy given by inserting radio-active seeds directly into the prostate.

CAB: Combined Androgen Blockade.

Clinically detected disease: cancer that came to light as a result of a symptom or abnormal clinical finding.

Cryotherapy: a treatment which aims to eradicate prostate cancer by freezing the prostate gland.

Decision aids: booklets or videos/DVDs that provide information about the disease, treatment options and outcomes, and help patients to explore how their individual values impact on their treatment decision.

Digital rectal examination (DRE): an examination in which a doctor inserts a lubricated, gloved finger into the rectum to feel for abnormalities.

Distant spread: spread of cancer from the primary site to nearby lymph glands or more distant parts of the body (also known as 'metastatic' or 'secondary' spread).

External beam radiotherapy (EBRT): is radiotherapy given by using ionising radiation (e.g. high energy X-rays) produced in a machine and directed at the tumour from outside the patient.

Gleason score: an internationally recognised grading system, based on examination of tissue obtained by prostate biopsy, where a pathologist allocates an overall cell abnormality score that can help predict prostate tumour behaviour. A low Gleason score (≤ 7) indicates a relatively favourable cancer, a high Gleason score (\geq) indicates a relatively aggressive cancer.

Grading: the degree of malignancy of a tumour, judged by its appearance under the microscope.

Haematuria: the presence of blood in the urine. Macroscopic haematuria is visible to the naked eye, and microscopic haematuria is only seen by microscopic examination of a sample from a urine test.

Haemorrhagic changes: changes to blood vessels in the lining of the bladder or bowel which makes them more fragile and likely to bleed.

High intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU): a technique where high-frequency ultrasound waves are aimed at the cancer, heating up the cells with the aim of causing cell death and eradicating the cancer.

Holmium laser resection of the prostate (HoLeP): surgery to remove tissue from the prostate using an instrument inserted via the urethra using a high powered laser.

- 1 Can be used to improve symptoms in men with restriction to their urinary stream from
2 BPH or a prostate tumour.
- 3 **Hormonal treatment/therapy:** treatment of cancer by removing and/or, blocking the
4 effects of hormones which stimulate the growth of prostate cancer cells.
- 5 **Hormone refractory (also known as hormone resistant):** a condition where the
6 tumour no longer responds to hormonal therapy.
- 7 **Incidence:** the number of new cases of a disease in a given time period.
- 8 **Isotope bone scan:** an imaging technique which uses an injection of a short-lived
9 radio-active isotope to show up abnormal areas of the bone.
- 10 **Isotope bone scintigraphy:** another name for a bone scan.
- 11 **Karnofsky status:** classifies patients according to their functional impairment.
- 12 **LHRHa (Luteinising hormone-releasing hormone agonists):** hormonal drugs that
13 inhibit the production of androgens from the testes.
- 14 **Locally advanced prostate cancer:** cancer which has been staged as T3 or T4
15 (spread outside the prostate gland).
- 16 **Local treatment:** treatment that is directed at tumour cells in one localised area.
- 17 **Localised prostate cancer:** cancer which has been staged as T1 or T2 (confined to
18 the prostate gland).
- 19 **Lymphadenectomy:** a surgical procedure in which *lymph nodes* are removed for
20 analysis.
- 21 **Lymphadenopathy:** disease or swelling of the lymph nodes.
- 22 **Lymph nodes:** small organs which act as filters in the lymphatic system. Lymph
23 nodes close to the primary tumour are often the first sites to which cancer spreads.
- 24 **Medical castration:** hormonal therapy with an LHRHa given to lower the levels of
25 the testosterone hormone made by the testicles.
- 26 **Metastases/metastatic disease:** spread of cancer away from the primary site to
27 somewhere else via the bloodstream or the lymphatic system.
- 28 **Metastatic prostate cancer:** cancer which has spread from the primary site in the
29 prostate to the lymph nodes, bones or other parts of the body.
- 30 **Multi Disciplinary Team (MDT):** a team with members from different health care
31 professions (e.g. urology, oncology, pathology, radiology, nursing).
- 32 **Neoadjuvant:** treatment given before the main treatment.
- 33 **Nadir:** the lowest measured amount.
- 34 **Nomograms:** a calculating device based on statistical probabilities, which is used to
35 provide individualised estimates of the likelihood of clinical outcomes.
- 36 **Obstructive uropathy:** impairment of kidney function as a result of back pressure
37 caused by obstruction of the urethra or lymph nodes. This may be a result of prostatic or
38 lymph nodal disease.
- 39 **Oncology:** the study of cancers.
- 40 **Orchidectomy (also known as bilateral subcapsular orchidectomy or surgical
41 castration):** surgery to remove the active component of both testicles in order to
42 reduce the level of testosterone.
- 43 **Palliative:** anything which serves to alleviate symptoms due to the underlying cancer
44 but is not expected to cure it.
- 45 **Perineal prostatectomy:** a technique where the prostate is removed through an
46 incision made between the scrotum and the anus.
- 47 **Plain radiographs:** single X-ray images.
- 48 **Positron emission tomography (PET):** a specialised imaging technique using a
49 radioactive tracer to produce a computerised image of body tissues and find
50 abnormalities. PET scans may be used to help diagnose cancer, to see how far it has
51 spread and to investigate response to treatment.

- 1 **Progressive disease:** prostate cancer that shows either clinical, radiological or
2 biochemical evidence of growth.
- 3 **Prostate:** a gland of the male reproductive system which produces fluid for semen.
- 4 **Prostate biopsies:** removal of samples of tissue from the prostate gland for
5 microscopic examination and other tests.
- 6 **Prostatectomy:** surgery to remove part, or all of the prostate gland. Radical
7 prostatectomy aims at the removal of the entire prostate gland and lymph nodes.
8 This can be performed by an open approach or by keyhole technique (laparoscopic
9 or robotically assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy).
- 10 **Prostate intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN):** an abnormality of prostate tissue identified
11 by microscopic examination. It represents a potentially pre-malignant lesion but may
12 also co-exist with cancer in a small proportion of men.
- 13 **Prostate Specific Antigen (PSA):** a protein produced by the prostate gland and
14 identified in the blood. Men with prostate cancer tend to have higher levels of PSA in
15 their blood (although most men with prostate cancer have normal PSA levels). PSA
16 levels may also be increased by conditions other than cancer and levels tend to
17 increase naturally with age.
- 18 **Prostate Specific Antigen (PSA) test:** a test which measures PSA levels in the
19 blood.
- 20 **Radical treatment:** treatment given with the aim of cure, rather than just improving
21 symptoms.
- 22 **Retropubic prostatectomy:** a technique where the prostate is removed through an
23 incision in the abdomen.
- 24 **Salvage therapy:** treatment that is given after the cancer has progressed following
25 other treatments.
- 26 **Sclerotic bone metastases:** secondary cancer deposits in the bone which show on
27 X-rays as areas of increased bone density.
- 28 **Screen-detected cancer:** cancer identified by screening a defined population (e.g.
29 using PSA measurement).
- 30 **Staging/TNM staging:** clinical description of the size and extent of a patient's
31 tumour, by allocation into internationally agreed categories.
- 32 **Surgical castration:** treatment which removes the testicles (orchidectomy) and
33 reduces the level of testosterone.
- 34 **Systemic treatment:** treatment, usually given by mouth or by injection, that reaches
35 and affects tumour cells throughout the body rather than targeting one specific area.
- 36 **Transrectal ultrasound:** an ultrasound examination of the prostate using a probe
37 inserted into the rectum.
- 38 **Trans-urethral resection of the prostate (TURP):** surgery to remove tissue from
39 the prostate using an instrument inserted via the urethra. Can be used to improve
40 symptoms in men with restriction to their urinary stream from BPH or a prostate
41 tumour.
- 42 **Ultrasound-guided prostate biopsy:** a technique to allow targeted sampling of
43 prostate tissue using a needle guided by images obtained from an ultrasound.
- 44 **Ureters:** the tubes carrying urine from the kidneys to the bladder.
- 45 **Urethra:** the tube leading from the bladder through which urine leaves the body.
- 46 **Urology:** a branch of medicine concerned with the diagnosis and treatment of
47 diseases of the urinary organs in females and the urogenital system in males.
- 48 **Watchful waiting:** a method of managing the disease of those who are not suitable
49 for radical treatment, involving palliative treatment only if and when they develop
50 symptoms.

Appendix 6

Guideline Scope

1. Guideline title

Prostate cancer: diagnosis and treatment

1.1 Short title

Prostate cancer

2. Background

(a) The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence ('NICE' or 'the Institute') has commissioned the National Collaborating Centre for Cancer to develop a clinical guideline on the diagnosis and treatment of prostate cancer for use in the NHS in England and Wales. This follows referral of the topic by the Department of Health and Welsh Assembly Government (see Appendix). The guideline will provide recommendations for good practice that are based on the best available evidence of clinical and cost effectiveness and professional consensus.

(b) The Institute's clinical guidelines will support the implementation of National Service Frameworks (NSFs) in those aspects of care where a Framework has been published. The statements in each NSF reflect the evidence that was used at the time the Framework was prepared. The clinical guidelines and technology appraisals published by the Institute after an NSF has been issued will have the effect of updating the Framework.

(c) This guideline will support current national initiatives outlined in the *NHS Cancer Plan*, the Calman Hine Report, the Cameron Report, the *Manual for Cancer Services for England* and the *Wales Cancer Standards*. The guideline will also refer to the NICE service guidance documents 'Improving outcomes in urological cancers' and 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer' and the clinical guideline documents 'Referral guidelines for suspected cancer' and 'Osteoporosis: assessment of fracture risk and the prevention of osteoporotic fractures in individuals at high risk' (in development).

(d) NICE clinical guidelines support the role of healthcare professionals in providing care in partnership with patients, taking account of their individual needs and preferences, and ensuring that patients (and their carers and families, where appropriate) can make informed decisions about their care and treatment.

3. Clinical need for the guideline

Prostate cancer is one of the commonest cancers in men. Each year there are about 27,773 new cases in England and Wales^{a b} and 9161 deaths^c. Prostate cancer is

^a Office for National Statistics, Cancer Statistics Registrations: Registrations of cancer diagnosed in 2001, England. Series MB1 no. 32. 2004, National Statistics: London.

^b Welsh Cancer Intelligence and Surveillance Unit, 2003.

^c Office for National Statistics, Mortality Statistics: Cause. England and Wales 2003. TSO: London.

1 predominantly a disease of older men but around 20% of cases occur in men under
 2 the age of 65. Over the past 10 to 15 years there have been a number of significant
 3 advances in its management but also a number of major controversies, especially
 4 about the clinical management of patients with early, non-metastatic disease. These
 5 uncertainties clearly cause anxieties for patients and their families. There is evidence
 6 of practice variation around the country and of patchy availability of certain
 7 treatments and procedures. A clinical guideline will help to address these issues and
 8 offer guidance on best practice.

9 **4. The guideline**

- 10 a) The guideline development process is described in detail in two publications
 11 that are available from the NICE website (see 'Further information'). *The*
 12 *guideline development process – an overview for stakeholders, the public and*
 13 *the NHS* describes how organisations can become involved in the
 14 development of a guideline. *Guideline development methods – information for*
 15 *National Collaborating Centres and guideline developers* provides advice on
 16 the technical aspects of guideline development.
- 17 b) This document is the scope. It defines exactly what this guideline will (and will
 18 not) examine, and what the guideline developers will consider. The scope is
 19 based on the referral from the Department of Health and Welsh Assembly
 20 Government (see Appendix).
- 21 c) The areas that will be addressed by the guideline are described in the
 22 following sections.

23 **4.1 Population**

24 **4.1.1 Groups that will be covered**

- 25 a) Adults referred from primary care for investigation of possible prostate cancer,
 26 in line with the NICE clinical guidelines on referral suspected cancer (*NICE*
 27 *Clinical Guideline no. 27*).
- 28 b) Adults with a biopsy-proven diagnosis of primary adenocarcinoma of the
 29 prostate or an agreed clinical diagnosis* when biopsy would be inappropriate.
 30 (*Agreed clinical diagnosis on the basis of, for example, digital rectal
 31 examination, high prostate-specific antigen [PSA] and known metastases.)
- 32 c) No patient subgroups needing special consideration have been identified.

33 **4.1.2 Groups that will not be covered**

- 34 a) Asymptomatic adults with an abnormal, age-specific PSA level and no biopsy-
 35 proven diagnosis of prostate cancer.
- 36 b) Patients with metastatic disease of different primary origin involving the
 37 prostate.
- 38 c) Children and adults with rare malignant tumours of the prostate, such as small
 39 cell carcinoma and rhabdomyosarcoma.

40 **4.2 Healthcare setting**

- 41 a) Primary care – excluding population-based and opportunistic screening.

- 1 b) Secondary care.
- 2 c) Tertiary care by specialist urological cancer teams.

3 **4.3 Clinical management**

- 4 a) Investigation to establish a histopathological diagnosis.
- 5 b) Diagnostic investigations for clinical staging.
- 6 c) Active surveillance of men with localised disease suitable for radical treatment.
- 7 d) Surgical management including radical prostatectomy, perineal prostatectomy,
8 laparoscopic prostatectomy, high-frequency ultrasound, radiofrequency
9 ablation and cryotherapy.
- 10 e) Radiotherapy including external beam, brachytherapy (high and low dose rate)
11 and unsealed radioactive sources (strontium-89 and samarium-153).
- 12 f) Hormonal treatments: neo-adjuvant, adjuvant and palliative; surgical and
13 pharmacological.
- 14 g) Cytotoxic chemotherapy: neo-adjuvant, adjuvant and palliative.
- 15 h) Bisphosphonates.
- 16 i) Novel biological and immunological agents.
- 17 j) The management of common treatment-related side effects and
18 complications.
- 19 k) Patient information, support and specific aids for complex decision making.

20 **4.4 Status**

21 **4.4.1 Scope**

22 This is the final scope.

23 *NICE appraisals in development*

- 24 • Docetaxel for the treatment of hormone refractory prostate cancer. Expected
25 date of issue July 2006.
- 26 • Atrasentan for hormone refractory prostate cancer. Expected date of issue
27 January 2008.

28 *NICE guidance in development*

- 29 • Osteoporosis: assessment of fracture risk and the prevention of osteoporotic
30 fractures in individuals at high risk. Publication date to be confirmed.

31

1 *Related published NICE guidance*

- 2 • National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (2005). Referral guidelines
3 for suspected cancer. London: National Institute for Health and Clinical
4 Excellence. Available from www.nice.org.uk/CG027
- 5 • National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2002). Improving outcomes in
6 urological cancers. London: National Institute for Clinical Excellence. Available
7 from www.nice.org.uk/csguc
- 8 • National Institute for Clinical Excellence (2004). Improving supportive and
9 palliative care for adults with cancer. London: National Institute for Clinical
10 Excellence. Available from www.nice.org.uk/csgsp

11 **4.4.2 Guideline**

12 The development of the guideline recommendations will begin in November 2005.

13 **5. Further information**

14 Information on the guideline development process is provided in:

- 15 • *The guideline development process – an overview for stakeholders, the public*
16 *and the NHS*
- 17 • *Guideline development methods –information for National Collaborating Centres*
18 *and guideline developers*

19 These booklets are available as PDF files from the NICE website
20 (www.nice.org.uk/guidelinesprocess). Information on the progress of the guideline
21 will also be available from the website.

22 **6. Referral from the Department of Health and Welsh Assembly Government**

23 The Department of Health and Welsh Assembly Government asked the Institute:
24 'To prepare a guideline for the NHS in England and Wales for the clinical
25 management of prostate cancer, to supplement existing service guidance. The
26 guideline should cover:

- 27 - the key diagnostic and staging procedures – excluding screening
- 28 - the main treatment modalities including hormonal treatments (covering
29 surgical and chemical castration)
- 30 - the role of tumour specific bisphosphonates.'

1 Appendix 7

3 List of Topics Covered by Each Chapter

4 Chapter 2 – Communication and Patient Centred Care

- 5 • How effective are decision aids at informing men with prostate cancer (and
- 6 their wives/partners/carers/family) about treatment options?
- 7 • What are the communication methods that effectively inform men with prostate
- 8 cancer (and their wives/partners/carers/family) about treatment options?
- 9 • What are the perspectives of men who have prostate cancer (and their
- 10 wives/partners/carers/family) with regard to information/communication needs
- 11 about treatment options, decision making processes and influencing factors?
- 12 • What is the most effective intervention for men with prostate cancer who
- 13 experience emotional distress caused by loss of masculinity?

14 Chapter 3 – Diagnosis and Staging of Prostate Cancer

- 15 • In men presenting with bone metastases and unknown primary cancer, at
- 16 what level of PSA does a biopsy become unnecessary?
- 17 • How do we optimise the detection of men with prostate cancer in those men
- 18 where cancer has been missed on initial investigation, whilst sparing those
- 19 who do not have cancer from unnecessary repeat investigation or prolonged
- 20 follow-up?
- 21 • In men with clinically localised prostate cancer, for whom radical (curative)
- 22 treatment is intended, does radiological imaging help to inform the choice of
- 23 radical treatment? If so which imaging modalities are clinically and cost
- 24 effective?
- 25 • Is there a need for radiological imaging in men with prostate cancer who are
- 26 not intended for curative treatment?
- 27 • In men with localised prostate cancer, what is the validity of published prostate
- 28 cancer nomograms?
- 29 • Should men with suspected prostate cancer who have a raised PSA level
- 30 automatically be referred for biopsy to determine if they have prostate cancer?

31 Chapter 4 – Localised Prostate Cancer

- 32 • In men with localised prostate cancer what are the risk factors for:
- 33 • Disease specific mortality
- 34 • Lymph node involvement
- 35 • Treatment failure (disease recurrence, biochemical relapse)?
- 36 • In men with localised or locally advanced prostate cancer, which treatments
- 37 (radical prostatectomy, EBRT, brachytherapy, conformal radiotherapy,
- 38 conventional radiotherapy, HIFU, cryotherapy) are clinically and cost effective
- 39 compared to watchful waiting?
- 40 • In men with prostate cancer, who is eligible to receive active surveillance and
- 41 what is the most effective protocol to follow?
- 42 • In men with prostate cancer receiving active surveillance, what are the
- 43 indicators for intervention with radical treatment?
- 44 • In men with prostate cancer, what are the effective interventions for sexual
- 45 dysfunction (either caused by radical treatment or the disease itself)?

- 1 • In men who have been treated with radical surgery or radical radiotherapy for
2 prostate cancer, what are the effective interventions for incontinence?
3 • In men who have been treated with radical radiotherapy for prostate cancer
4 what are the effective interventions for radiation toxicity?
5 • In men who have received treatment for prostate cancer, what is the most
6 effective follow-up protocol?

7 Chapter 5 –The Management of Relapse After Radical Treatment

- 8 • In men who have had radical treatment for prostate cancer, what is the clinical
9 importance of biochemical relapse after radical therapy and how should
10 biochemical relapse be defined?
11 • In men with biochemical relapse following radical treatment for prostate
12 cancer, what staging investigations are effective?
13 • In men with biochemical relapse following radical treatment for prostate
14 cancer, what salvage therapies for local recurrence are effective?

15 Chapter 6 – Locally Advanced Prostate Cancer

- 16 • In men with prostate cancer does the addition of adjuvant therapy to radical
17 therapy improve outcomes?
18 • In men with prostate cancer receiving hormonal therapy, are bisphosphonates
19 effective at preventing bone metastases?
20 • What is the clinical and cost-effectiveness of pelvic radiotherapy in patients
21 receiving radical radiotherapy for prostate cancer?

22 Chapter 7 – Metastatic Prostate Cancer

- 23 • In men with metastatic prostate cancer which type of initial hormonal therapy
24 is clinically effective?
25 • In men who have been treated with hormonal therapy for prostate cancer,
26 what are the effective interventions for managing the complications of
27 hormonal therapy?
28 • What is the most effective corticosteroid for the treatment of men with
29 castration refractory prostate cancer?
30 • In patients with known bone metastases and no symptoms or signs of spinal
31 cord compression, does routine MRI scan of spine at the time of diagnosis of
32 bone metastases improve outcome?
33 • In men with prostate cancer can bisphosphonates reduce the risk of bone
34 complications from androgen deprivation?
35 • In men with HRPC and confirmed bone metastases, can bisphosphonates
36 delay or improve the complications of bone metastases?
37 • In patients with hormone refractory prostate cancer with bone metastases,
38 does the addition of Strontium 89 to standard care improve outcomes?
39 • What is the most effective management of obstructive uropathy in men with
40 hormone refractory prostate cancer?
41 • What is the most effective delivery of palliative care for men with prostate
42 cancer?
43
44

Appendix 8

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9

People and Organisations Involved in Production of the Guideline

- 8.1 Members of the Guideline Development Group
- 8.2 Organisations invited to comment on guideline development
- 8.3 Individuals carrying out literature reviews and complementary work
- 8.4 Expert Advisers to the Guideline Development Group
- 8.5 Members of the Guideline Review Panel

Conflicts of Interests

The Guideline Development Group were asked to declare any possible conflicts of interest and none that could interfere with their work on the guideline.

Mark Baker (Chair):

Conducted work (for fees) for industry intermediaries who are reimbursed by pharmaceutical companies, specifically Roche and Pfizer. Does not have direct contact with the healthcare industry bodies. Declared 7 May 07

John Graham (Lead Clinician):

Lecture Fees, accommodation and travel expenses received from Astra Zeneca Pharmaceuticals, Aventis, Sanofi-Aventis and Bayer Pharmaceuticals. Involved in Industry sponsored clinical trials for Astellas Pharmaceuticals, Boehringer Ingelheim, Immunicon, Cell Genesys Inc., Sanofi-Aventis, GPC Pharmaceuticals, Sonus Pharmaceuticals, Glaxo SmithKline, PDL Inc. Consultancy Fees from Pfizer. Clinical trial work with Bayer Pharmaceuticals. Declared February 06 and July 07

Angela Billington:

Consultancy on writing leaflets and articles on incontinence issues. Working group on incontinence issues. Both for pharmaceutical companies. Declared October 05

David Gillatt:

Sponsorship for meeting from Astra Zeneca. Educational and research grants from Astra Zeneca. Sponsorship from Sanofi Aventis to go to the European Society of Urological Oncology meeting. Expenses paid by EDAP to observe and trained on the Ablatherm HIFU machine. Looking for sponsorship for annual meeting (BAUS Section of Oncology). Declared October 05 and July 07

Brendan Carey

Sponsorship for lecturing and mentoring from Oncura IBT. Declared July 07

Chris Hiley:

Occasionally accepts fees from pharmaceutical companies for involvement in particular activities, but these fees go to the charity worked for not personally. Charity worked for both receives and solicits funding from pharmaceutical companies, but personally has no connections with these negotiations and is usually unaware of the presence of financial support or details. Declared September 05

Chris Parker:

Astra Zeneca, Algeta, Sanofi Aventis, Cell Genesys, Link Pharmaceuticals – received honoraria for giving presentations or attending Advisory boards. Consultant to Algeta. Declared September 05, February 06, April 06, May and July 07

John Rawlinson:

Has contact with but no contractual relationship with a range of healthcare providers and organisations in the field of mental health but none related to prostate disorders. Declared September 05

John Wiles:

Chairman and executive committee member of the Association for Palliative Medicine of Great Britain and Ireland. Medical Director Harris HospisCare. Trustee of the National Council for Palliative Care. Declared November 05

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

Jervoise Andreyev:

Has received an unrestricted educational grant from Norgine which was used to run an ongoing study investigating the optimal treatment of radiotherapy-induced faecal incontinence. Also has an ongoing project funded by an unrestricted educational grant from SHS International which is investigating the use of elemental diet in preventing acute and hence long term toxicity. Has submitted or have in late stages of preparation 5 grant applications looking at different aspects of radiation-induced gastrointestinal damage. Declared December 06

1 **Appendix 8.2**

2

3 **Organisations invited to comment on guideline development**

4

5 The following stakeholders registered with NICE and were invited to comment on the

6 scope and the draft version of this guideline.

7

8

Abbott Laboratories Ltd (BASF/Knoll)	Bradford & Airedale PCT
Addenbrooke's NHS Trust	Bradford South & West PCT
Afiya Trust, The	British Association for Counselling and Psychotherapy
Age Concern England	British Association of Art Therapists
Aintree Hospitals NHS Trust	British Association of Urological Nurses
Airedale General Hospital	British Association of Urological Surgeons
Albyn Medical Ltd	British Dietetic Association
American Medical Systems UK	British Geriatrics Society
Amgen UK Ltd	British Lymphology Society
Anglesey Local Health Board	British National Formulary (BNF)
Ashfield and Mansfield District PCT	British Nuclear Medicine Society
Association for Continence Advice (ACA)	British Oncology Pharmacy Association
Association of Chartered Physiotherapists in Women's Health	British Prostate Group
Association of Clinical Biochemistry	British Psychological Society
Association of the British Pharmaceuticals Industry (ABPI)	British Uro-oncology Group
Astellas Pharma Ltd	Bromley PCT
AstraZeneca UK Ltd	BUPA
Aventis Pharma	Cancer Black Care
Bard Ltd	Cancer Network Pharmacists Forum
Barnsley Acute Trust	Cancer Research UK
Barnsley PCT	Cancer Services Collaborative Improvement Partnership
Bath and North East Somerset PCT	CancerBACUP
Bedfordshire & Hertfordshire NHS Strategic Health Authority	CASPE
Birmingham Heartlands & Solihull NHS Trust	Cephalon UK Ltd
Blaenau Gwent Local Health Board	Chartered Society of Physiotherapy
Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd	Clatterbridge Centre for Oncology NHS Trust
Bostwick Laboratories	College of Occupational Therapists

Coloplast Ltd
 Commission for Social Care
 Inspection
 Connecting for Health
 Continence Foundation
 Cornwall & Isles of Scilly PCT
 Countess of Chester Hospitals NHS
 Trust
 Craven, Harrogate & Rural District
 PCT
 DakoCytomation Ltd
 David Lewis Centre, The
 Denbighshire Local Health Board
 Department of Health
 EDAP-TMS
 Eisai Ltd
 Faculty of Public Health
 Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd
 General Practice and Primary Care
 Gloucestershire Hospitals NHS
 Trust
 Guerbet Laboratories Ltd
 Guildford & Waverley PCT
 Healthcare Commission
 Help the Hospices
 Independent Healthcare Advisory
 Service
 Intra-Tech Healthcare Ltd
 Ipsen Ltd
 James Whale Fund for Kidney
 Cancer
 Johnson & Johnson Medical
 King's College Hospital NHS Trust
 King George's Hospital NHS Trust
 Leeds North East PCT
 Leeds Teaching Hospitals NHS
 Trust
 Link Pharmaceuticals
 Liverpool PCT
 Long Term Medical Conditions
 Alliance

Luton and Dunstable Hospital NHS
 Trust
 Macmillan Cancer Relief
 Maidstone and Tunbridge Wells
 NHS Trust
 Medical Research Council Clinical
 Trials Unit
 Medicines and Healthcare Products
 Regulatory Agency
 Medway NHS Trust, The
 Men's Health Forum
 MERCK SHARP & DOHME
 National Audit Office
 National Association of Assistants
 in Surgical Practice
 National Cancer Network Clinical
 Directors Group
 National Cancer Research Institute
 (NCRI) Clinical Studies Group
 National Council for Disabled
 People, Black, Minority and Ethnic
 Community (Equalities)
 National Council for Palliative Care
 National Kidney Research Fund
 National Osteoporosis Society
 National Patient Safety Agency
 National Public Health Service –
 Wales
 NCCHTA
 NHS Cancer Screening Programme
 NHS Direct
 NHS Health and Social Care
 Information Centre
 NHS Quality Improvement Scotland
 North East London Strategic Health
 Authority
 North Eastern Derbyshire PCT
 North Sheffield PCT
 North Trent Cancer network
 Northwest London Hospitals NHS
 Trust
 Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd

Nucletron B.V.	Royal United Hospital Bath NHS Trust
Nutrition Society	Salford PCT
Oncura International	Sanofi-Synthelabo
Ortho Biotech	Schering Health Care Ltd
Oxford Nutrition Ltd	Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN)
PCaSO Prostate Cancer Network	Serono Ltd
PERIGON (formerly the NHS Modernisation Agency)	Sheffield South West PCT
Pharmion Ltd	Sheffield Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust
Pierre Fabre Ltd	Shropshire County and Telford & Welkin PCT
Primary Care Pharmacists' Association	Siemens Medical Solutions Diagnostics
Princess Alexandra Hospital NHS Trust	Society and College of Radiographers
Prostate Cancer Charity, The	South East Sheffield PCT
Prostate Cancer Research Foundation, The	South West Kent PCT
PSA Prostate Cancer Support Association	Staffordshire Moorlans PCT
Queen Victoria Hospital NHS Foundation Trust	Stockport PCT
Regional Public Health Group - London	Tameside and Glossop PCT
Roche Diagnostics Ltd	Taunton Road Medical Centre
Roche Products Ltd	Thames Valley Strategic Health Authority
Rotherham PCT	UK Anaemia
Royal College of Anaesthetists	UK National Screening Committee
Royal College of General Practitioners	UKHIFU
Royal College of General Practitioners Wales	University College London Hospitals NHS Trust (UCLH)
Royal College of Nursing (RCN)	University Hospital Aintree
Royal College of Pathologists	University Hospital Birmingham NHSFT
Royal College of Physicians of London	University Hospitals Coventry & Warwickshire NHS Trust
Royal College of Psychiatrists	University of Birmingham, Department of Primary Care & General Practice
Royal College of Radiologists	University of North Durham
Royal College of Surgeons of England	Velindre NHS Trust
Royal Society of Medicine	Walsall PCT
Royal West Sussex Trust, The	Walsall Teaching PCT

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

Wareney PCT
Welsh Assembly Government
Wessex Cancer Trust
West Cornwall PCT
West Lincolnshire PCT
Western Cheshire PCT

Whipps Cross University Hospital
NHS Trust
Wirral Hospital NHS Trust
World Cancer Research Fund
International
Wyeth Pharmaceuticals
Yamanouchi Pharma Ltd

1 **Appendix 8.3**

2
3 **Individuals carrying out literature reviews and complementary work**

4
5 **Overall Co-ordinators**

6 Dr Fergus Macbeth Director, National Collaborating Centre for Cancer, Cardiff

7
8 Dr Andrew Champion Centre Manager, National Collaborating Centre for
9 Cancer, Cardiff

10
11 **Project Managers**

12 Angela Bennett*¹ Assistant Centre Manager, National Collaborating Centre
13 for Cancer, Cardiff

14
15 Victoria Titshall*² National Collaborating Centre for Cancer, Cardiff

16
17 **Senior Researcher**

18 Angela Melder National Collaborating Centre for Cancer, Cardiff

19
20 **Researchers**

21 Dr Nathan Bromham National Collaborating Centre for Cancer, Cardiff

22
23 Dr Rossela Stoicescu External Researcher

24
25 Dr Susanne Hempel External Researcher

26
27 Ailsa Snaith External Researcher

28
29 **Information Specialists**

30 Stephanie Arnold National Collaborating Centre for Cancer, Cardiff

31
32 Sabine Berendse National Collaborating Centre for Cancer, Cardiff

33
34 Elise Collins National Collaborating Centre for Cancer, Cardiff

35
36 **Health Economists**

37 Dr Alec Miners*³ Lecturer in Health Economics, London School of Health
38 and Tropical Medicine

39
40 Dr Dyfrig Hughes*⁴ Director, Centre for the Economics and Policy in Health,
41 University of Wales, Bangor

42
43 Dr Rhiannon Tudor*⁴ Director, Centre for the Economics and Policy in Health,
44 University of Wales, Bangor

45
46 Pat Link*⁴ Research Officer, Centre for the Economics and Policy in
47 Health, University of Wales, Bangor

48
49 Eugenia Priedane*⁴ Research Fellow, Centre for the Economics and Policy in
50 Health, University of Wales, Bangor

1 *¹ From Nov 2005 to December 2006 *² From January 2007

2 *³ From Aug 2006 *⁴ From Nov 2005 to July 2006

3

4 **Needs Assessment**

5 Dr Sean McPhail*³ Head of Cancer Analysis, Cancer Intelligence Service
6 South West Public Health Observatory

7

8 Dr Tanya Cross*⁴ South West Public Health Observatory

9

10

1 **Appendix 8.4**

2

3 **Expert Advisers to the Guideline Development Group**

4

5 Dr Jervoise Andreyev Consultant Gastroenterologist in Pelvic Radiation
6 Disease, Department of Medicine, The Royal Marsden
7 NHS Foundation Trust

8

9 Dr Clare Moynihan The Institute of Cancer Research, The Royal Marsden
10 NHS Foundation Trust

11

1 **Appendix 8.5**

2 **Members of the Guideline Review Panel**

3 The Guideline Review Panel is an independent panel that oversees the development
4 of the guideline and takes responsibility for monitoring its quality. The members of
5 the Guideline review Panel were as follows.

6

7 **John Hyslop (Chair)**

8 Consultant Radiologist, Royal Cornwall Hospital NHS Trust

9 **Ash Paul**

10 Deputy Medical Director, Health Commission Wales (Specialist Services)

11 **Debra Collard**

12 Lay representative

13 **Jonathan Hopper**

14 Medical Director (UK and Ireland), ConvaTec

15